

MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES • VOLUME 12

EREC AND ENITE

HARTMANN VON AUE

Erec

Erec and Enite

Part Two: The Joy of the Court

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation
preserving the original word order

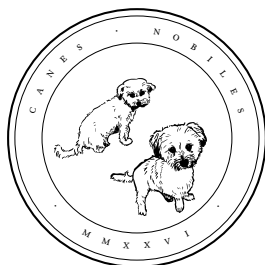


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 12 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Erec: eine Erzählung von Hartmann von Aue,
zweite Ausgabe von Moriz Haupt (Leipzig: S. Hirzel, 1871), verses 5288 to 10135

Set from a page scan of the 1871 printing

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Haupt numbers them, every fifth verse
in the outer margin. A verse the manuscript lost, which Haupt counts
and marks with an asterisk, is set as three asterisks and glossed
as a lacuna. The paragraphs are the edition's own indented breaks;
the reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · The Weeping Lady, and the Two Giants	7
II · The Giants Slain, and Cadoc Freed	17
III · Cadoc Sent to Court, and Erec's Fall	30
IV · Enite's Lament, and the Sword	46
V · Count Oringles	59
VI · The Bier at Limors, and the Count's Table	71
VII · The Blow, and the Dead Man Wakes	84
VIII · The Escape from Limors, and the Reconciliation	96

IX · Guivreiz Rides by Night	106
X · The Night Under the Beeches, and Penefrec	117
XI · Enite's Palfrey	132
XII · The Saddle	145
XIII · The Saddlecloth, and the Road from Penefrec	156
XIV · Brandigan, and Guivreiz's Warning	167
XV · The Joy of the Court	179
XVI · The Eighty Ladies	191
XVII · King Ivreins' Counsel	204
XVIII · The Mass, and the Garden of Heads	218
XIX · Enite's Swoon, and the Lady in the Pavilion	231
XX · The Red Knight, and the Joust	244
XXI · The Sword Fight, and Mabonagrín Yields	255
XXII · Mabonagrín's Tale	267
XXIII · The Horn, and the Two Cousins	282
XXIV · The Ladies at Court, and Guivreiz Departs	294
XXV · The Coronation at Karnant	306

The Weeping Lady, and the Two Giants

I

Riding on with Enite, Erec hears a woman crying for help in the forest. He leaves Enite by the road and finds the woman bloody with grief, for two giants have carried off her lord. Erec overtakes them. They carry no knightly arms, only iron-bound clubs and whips, and they are driving the knight naked on his horse, hands bound, beaten until the skin hangs from him. Erec courteously asks what the man has done.

nû reit der ritter Êrec

now rode the knight Erec

als in bewîste der wec,

as him directed the way,

erne weste selbe war:

he-not knew himself whither:

sîn muot stuont niuwan dar

his spirit stood only thither

da er âventiure vunde.

where he adventure should-find.

nû reit er dâ ze stunde

now rode he there at once

ein wênige wîle,

a little while,

kûme eine mîle:

scarcely one mile:

dô hôrter eine stimme

then heard-he a voice

jæmerlîchen grimme

piteously grim

von dem wege wüefen,

from the way wail,

5290

5295

nâch helfe rüefen

for help call

5300 erbarmeclichen ein wîp,

pitiously a woman,

der was bekumbert ir lîp.

to-whom was troubled her person.

als er daz rüefen vernam,

when he the calling heard,

michel wunder in des nam

great wonder him of-it took

waz diu rede möhte sîn.

what the matter might be.

5305 dô was doch sîn manheit schîn.

then was yet his manhood evident.

er hiez frowen Ênîten

he bade lady Enite

sîn dâ ze stat bîten

for-him there on the-spot wait

und tetes erbeizen zuo dem wege.

and made-her dismount by the way.

mit sorge ergap si in gotes phlege,

with care gave-up she (him)-into God's keeping,

5310 als sî der wille lêrte,

as her the will taught,

dô er von ir kêrte.

when he from her turned.

des endes huop sich Êrec

in-that direction betook himself Erec

durch rûhen walt âne wec

through rough forest without way

unerbûwen strâze,

untrodden road,

- wan daz er die mâze 5315
but that he the measure
- bî des wîbes stimme nam,
by the woman's voice took,
- unz daz er rehte dar kam
until that he right thither came
- dâ sî von klage michel leit
where she from lament great sorrow
- in dem wilden walde erleit.
in the wild forest suffered.
- ir riuwigen hende 5320
her rueful hands
- hâten daz gebende
had the headband
- unschône abe gestroufet:
unsightly off stripped:
- zekratzet und zeroufet
scratched and torn
- het sich daz lîplôse wîp,
had herself the lifeless woman,
- daz ir diu wât und der lîp 5325
so-that to-her the clothing and the body
- mit bluote was berunnen.
with blood was overrun.
- sî het ouch gewonnen
she had also got
- von jâmer solhe swære
from misery such grief
- daz doch niemen wære
that yet no-one were
- alsô vestes herzen, 5330
so firm of-heart,

het er ir smerzen

bad he her pain

zuo den zîten gesehen,

at the times seen,

sît ich der wârheit sol jehen,

since I the truth shall declare,

sî müeste im erbarmen.

she must to-him move-to-pity.

5335 als er dô die armen

when he then the poor-one

in solher ungehabe sach,

in such distress saw,

vil nâch weinende sprach

very nearly weeping spoke

der tugenthafte man

the virtuous man

‘frowe, durch got saget an,

‘lady, for God tell on,

5340 waz ist daz ir weinet?

what is that you weep?

und wie sît ir sus vereinet

and how are you thus left-alone

in disem walde?

in this forest?

durch got saget balde

for God tell quickly

ob ich iu ze staten müge komen.’

whether I to-you to avail may come.’

5345 nû hâte ir benomen

now had from-her taken

diu bitter leides grimme

the bitter sorrow’s grimness

vil nâch gar die stimme:

very nearly wholly the voice:

ir herzen sûft daz wort zerbrach

her heart's sigh the word broke

daz sî vil kûme sprach

so-that she very scarcely spoke

‘weinens gêt mir michel nôt.

‘of-weeping goes to-me great need.

5350

herre, mir belîbet tôt

lord, to-me remains dead

der aller liebeſte man

the of-all dearest man

den ie wîp gewan.’

whom ever woman got.’

Êrec sprach ‘frouwe, wiest daz komen?’

Erec said ‘lady, how-is that come?’

‘herre, dâ habent mir in benomen

‘lord, there have from-me him taken

5355

zwêne risen, die fuorten in

two giants, they led him

des gevertes vor mir hin.

along-the way before me away.

herre, sî lânt in niht genesen,

lord, they let him not survive,

wan sî sint im gewesen

for they are to-him been

vîent nû vil manegen tac.

enemies now very many-a day.

5360

owê wie wol ich weinen mac!’

alas how well I weep may!’

‘frouwe, sint si iht verre?’

‘lady, are they at-all far?’

‘nein sî, lieber herre.’

‘no they, dear lord.’

‘nû wîsent mich nâch in.’

‘now direct me after them.’

- 5365 'herre, hie riten sî hin.'
'lord, here rode they away.'
 mit dem vinger wîste si in die vart
with the finger showed she him the way
 dâ er hin gefüeret wart.
where he away led was.
 'frouwe, nû gehabt iuch wol:
'lady, now bear yourself well:
 wande ich benamen sol
for I assuredly shall
- 5370 bî im belîben tôt,
by him remain dead,
 oder ich hilfe im ûz nôt.'
or I help him out-of distress.'
 nu bevalch in diu guote
now commended him the good-one
 mit Worten und mit muote
with words and with spirit
 in unsers herren gewalt.
into our Lord's power.
- 5375 ir gebet wart vil manecvalt
her prayer became very manifold
 und getriuwelîch der segen
and faithful the blessing
 den sî tete über den degen.
which she made over thethane.
 nû was er komen ûf ir slâ
now was he come upon their track
 und îlte in vil sêre nâ
and hastened them very sorely after
- 5380 unz er se begunde sehen an.
until he them began to-look at.

nû heten die zwêne grôzen man
now had the two great men

weder schilt noch sper
neither shield nor spear

noch swert alsô er;
nor sword as he;

des er von rehte genôz.
of-which he by right profited.

wâfens wâren sî blôz.
of-arms were they bare.

5385

waz ir wer wære?
what their defense were?

zwêne kolben swære,
two clubs heavy,

grôze unde lange:
great and long:

den wâren die stange
of-which were the shafts

mit îsen beslagen.
with iron bound.

5390

ez möhte doch einen zagen
it might yet a coward

immer mêre vergân
ever more pass-by

daz er getorste sî bestân.
that he dared them face.

ouch fuorten die unguoten
also carried the evil-ones

zwô geiselruoten
two whip-rods

5395

mit vingergrôzen strangen:
with finger-thick cords:

den sî dâ heten gevangen,
him-whom they there had captured,

den triben sî dâ mite

him drove they there with

nâch freislichem site.

after fearsome custom.

5400 er reit âne gewant

he rode without clothing

unde blôz sam ein hant.

and bare as a hand.

geleit wâr in die hende

laid were to-him the hands

ze rücke mit gebende

to back with binding

und die fûeze unden

and the feet beneath

5405 zesamene gebunden.

together bound.

vîl manegen geiselslac er leit

very many-a whip-blow he suffered

dâ er vor in hin reit.

where he before them away rode.

sî sluogn in ân erbarmen,

they struck him without pity,

sô sêre daz dem armen

so sorely that to-the poor-one

5410 diu hût abhin hie

the skin down hung

von dem houbet an diu knie.

from the head to the knees.

sî brâchen vaste ritters reht

they broke greatly knight's right

und handelten den guoten kneht,

and handled the good warrior,

und wære er begangen,

and were he caught,

- an diebes stat gevangen, 5415
in thief's place captured,
- solher zuht wær ze vil.
of-such punishment were too much.
- er was geslagen unz ûf daz zil
he was struck until up-to the point
- daz er des bluotes was ersigen
that he of-the blood was drained
- unde nû sô gar geswigen
and now so wholly silenced
- daz in schriens verdrôz. 5420
that him of-crying wearied.
- daz bluot regens wîs flôz
the blood rain's wise flowed
- des rosses sîten hin ze tal:
the horse's sides away to downward:
- ez was bluotic über al.
it was bloody over all.
- der ritter grôze quâle leit,
the knight great torment suffered,
- sô unvernomen arbeit, 5425
so unbeard-of hardship,
- daz nimmer man ân den tôt
that never man without the death
- möhte erliden grœzer nôt
might suffer greater distress
- danne im dô geschach.
than to-him then happened.

als ditz Êrec ersach,
when this Erec saw,

5430 nu bewegte des ritters smerze
now moved the knight's pain

sô sêre sîn herze
so sorely his heart

daz er bi im ê wære erslagen
that he beside him sooner would-have-been slain

ê er inz hâte vertragen
before he them-it had tolerated

und daz an sîner varwe schein.
and that-it in his color showed.

5435 er sprach zuo den zwein
he said to the two

‘ir herren beide,
‘you lords both,

ich frâge iuch niht ze leide:
I ask you not to offense:

durch got mugt irz mich wizzen lân?
for God may you-it me know let?

waz hât iu der man getân
what has to-you the man done

5440 den ir dâ habt gevangen?
whom you there have captured?

saget, waz hât er begangen?
say, what has he committed?

ez schadet iu niht und ist mir lieb.
it harms you not and is to-me dear.

weder ist er mordær oder diep?
whether is he murderer or thief?

od wie hât erz umb iuch verholt,
or how has he-it toward you incurred,

5445 sô swære zuht die er dolt?’
so heavy punishment which he endures?’

The Giants Slain, and Cadoc Freed

II

The giant mocks Erec's question and strikes the prisoner before his eyes. Erec charges and drives his spear through one giant's eye. The other shatters Erec's shield with his club, and Erec, helped by the God who helped David against Goliath, cuts him down at the leg and beheads him. Erec follows the blood trail to the captive, unbinds him, and reunites him with his lady. He is Cadoc of Cafriol, bound for the king's court in Britain.

des antwurte im der eine

to-that answered him the one

(der ahte im sîne frâge kleine)

(who esteemed to-him his question little)

‘nû waz hât dû tumbe

‘now what hast thou fool

ze frâgen dar umbe

to ask there about

waz er uns habe getân?

what he to-us has done?

5450

des welln wir dich niht wizzen lân.

of-that will we thee not know let.

rehter affe, nû sich,

right ape, now look,

dû unwirdest dich

thou dishonorest thyself

daz dû frâgest alsô vil

that thou askest so much

daz dir niemen sagen wil.

what to-thee no-one tell will.

5455

nû war umbe jagest dû mich?’

now what for chasest thou me?’

Êrec sprach ‘herre, nein ich.’

Erec said ‘lord, no I.’

dannoch redte er mit listen

still spoke he with cunning

unde wände in sô gefristen.

and thought him so to-save.

5460 'ich hôrtin rüefen verre.

I heard-him call far.

geloubet ir mir, herre,

believe you me, lord,

ich habez niht durch übel getân

I have-it not for ill done

daz ich iu her gevolget hân.

that I you hither followed have.

mich wundert waz ez wære.

me wonders what it were.

5465 daz sî iu niht swære.

let-that be to-you not grievous.

doch wil ich iu zwære sagen

yet will I to-you truly say

(daz enmöhte ich niht verdagen),

(that could I not keep-silent),

hât dirre man ritters namen,

(if)-has this man knight's name,

sô möhtent ir iuch immer schamen

so might you yourselves ever shame

5470 daz er des niht geniuzet

that he of-it not profits

und iuch niht bedriuzet

and you not wearies

der grôzen unfuoge.

of-the great outrage.

jâ hât er zuht genuoge

indeed has he punishment enough

enphangen, swaz er hât getân:

received, whatever he has done:

muget ir in durch got lân?’

may you him for God let-go?’

5475

der michel man sus wider sprach,

the great man thus back spoke,

‘dîn klaffen ist mir ungemach.

‘thy chattering is to-me troublesome.

erlâ mich dîner frâge.

spare me thy question.

dû setzest enwâge

thou settest at-stake

dînen lîp vil sêre.

thy life very sorely.

5480

möht ich an dir kein êre

might I on thee any honor

begên oder deheinen ruon,

achieve or any fame,

ich zerbræch dich als ein huon.

I would-break thee as a hen.

nû waz frumet im dîn frâge?

now what profits him thy question?

nû nim dirn ze mâte

now take to-thee-him as kinsman

5485

und hilf im: dêst im nôt genuoc.’

and help him: that-is to-him need enough.’

im ze sehenne er in sluoc

for-him to see he him struck

und hiez in strîchen sînen wec.

and bade him be-off his way.

dannoch wolde in Êrec

still would him Erec

mit güete überwunden hân

with kindness overcome have

5490

daz er den ritter hæte lân.

so-that he the knight would-have let-go.

diu bete was vil gar verlorn,
the request was very wholly lost,

wan daz er reizte der risen zorn.
but that he roused the giants' anger.

dem ritter tâten sî dô wê
to-the knight did they then pain

5495 durch sînen haz wirs dan ê:
for his hatred worse than before:

wan sî hâten vorhte noch wân
for they had fear nor expectation

daz er sî torste bestân.
that he them dared face.

und als Êrec der degen balt
and when Erec thethane bold

ersach daz er sîn engalt,
saw that he for-him paid,

5500 daz muote in harte sêre.
that grieved him very sorely.

nu entwelte er niht mêre,
now tarried he not more,

wan undern arm sluoc er
but under-the arm put he

mit guotem willen daz sper:
with good will the spear:

daz ros nam er mit den sporn:
the horse took he with the spurs:

5505 an sî truoc in der zorn.
at them bore him the anger.

daz huop sî dannoch kleine,
that moved them still little,

unz daz der eine

until that the one

von unwirde versûmde sich

from contempt neglected himself

unz daz im ein sperstich

until that to-him a spear-thrust

engegen in sîn houbet kam

against into his head came

5510

der im ein ouge benam.

which from-him an eye took.

der stich ergie mit solher kraft

the thrust went with such force

daz im wol ellenlanc der schaft

that to-him fully ell-long the shaft

ûz gienc vor dem ougen.

out went before the eye.

wie kleine ers wolde lounen

however little be-it would deny

5515

ern sigē zuo der erde tỗt,

he sank to the earth dead,

als ez der hōvesche got gebôt.

as it the courtly God commanded.

als sîn geselle

when his comrade

daz grōze gevelle

the great fall

gesach von dem micheln man,

saw of the great man,

5520

mit zorne kêrte er wider dan

with anger turned he back thence

und begunde den kolben wenden

and began the club to-swing

und gap in ze beiden henden.

and gave it to both hands.

Êrec erbeizte dô.

Erec dismounted then.

5525 des was der rise frô

of-that was the giant glad

und wânde sâ gewonnen hân.

and thought straightway won have.

in trouc, ob got wil, sîn wân.

him deceived, if God wills, his expectation.

er sluoc sam er wuote:

he struck as-if he raged:

wan daz sich Êrec huote

but that himself Erec guarded

5530 unde sich mit listen

and himself with cunning

wol kunde fristen,

well could preserve,

er wær zem êrsten erslagen.

he would-have-been at-the first slain.

sîn snelheit kunde in ûz tragen.

his quickness could him out bear.

den schilt er im dar bôt:

the shield he to-him there offered:

5535 über den gienc doch diu nôt.

over that went yet the stress.

swa er den schilt erreichte,

wherever he the shield reached,

daz herte bret er weichte

the hard board he softened

daz ez sich wol endrîzic kloup

so-that it itself fully into-thirty split

unde hôhe ûf stoup

and high up flew

5540 swaz der hulft wære.

whatever of-the cover was.

der kolbe was sô swære,
the club was so heavy,

alsô dicke unde er sluoc,
as often as he struck,

daz er sô sêre nider truoc
that he so sorely down bore

daz er in sô kurzer stunde
that he in so short time

* * *

5545

(lacuna)

ê ern ze slage vol erreit,
before he-it to stroke fully readied,

Êreken het sîn snelheit
Erec had his quickness

an in und wider von im getragen.
at him and back from him borne.

alsô het er in geslagen
thus had he him struck

wol vier stunt zuo dem beine,
fully four times on the leg,

5550

ezn huop in nie sô kleine,
it held-up him never so little,

ern slüege ez im ze jungest abe.
unless-he struck it from-him at last off.

do begunde der ungefüege knabe
then began the monstrous fellow

sîgen ûf diu knie.
to-sink upon the knees.

Êrec im vaste zuo gie.
Erec to-him fast toward went.

5555

dannoch vaht der vâlant
still fought the fiend

mit unverzagter hant.
with undaunted hand.

er sluoc sô manegen grimmen slac
he struck so many-a grim blow

daz uns wol wundern mac
that us well wonder may

5560 daz Êrec vor im genas,
that Erec before him survived,

wan daz der mit im was
but that he with him was

der Dâvide gap die kraft
who to-David gave the strength

daz er wart sigehaft
that he became victorious

an dem risen Golîa:
over the giant Goliath:

5565 der half ouch im des siges dâ
he helped also him to-the victory there

daz er in mit gewalte
so-that he him with force

volle gevalte
fully felled

und im daz houbet abe sluoc.
and from-him the head off struck.

dô was dâ vehtens genuoc.
then was there of-fighting enough.

5570 als Êrec den sige gewan,
when Erec the victory won,

dô hete den gevangen man
then had the captured man

daz ros in den walt getragen,
the horse into the forest carried,

daz er niene kunde gesagen
that he not-at-all could say

wâ er im ze vinden wart.
where he for-him to find was.

doch brâht in daz ûf die vart:

5575

yet brought him that onto the track:

swâ er hin geriten was,

wherever he thither ridden was,

dâ wâren boume unde gras

there were trees and grass

von sînem lîbe gar

from his body wholly

worden vil bluotvar

become very blood-colored

swâ er an ruorte

5580

wherever he against touched

dâ in daz ros hin fuorte:

where him the horse away bore:

wande er was gebunden

for he was bound

daz er ze deheinen stunden

so-that he at no times

den boumen mohte entwîchen,

the trees could avoid,

ern müeste sich dran strîchen.

5585

unless-he must himself thereon scrape.

dô spürte in der guote

then tracked him the good-one

allez an dem bluote

all by the blood

verre unz daz er in vant.

far until that he him found.

dô lôste er im diu bant

then loosed he from-him the bonds

5590 von fûezen und von henden

from feet and from hands

und brâhte den ellenden

and brought the forlorn-one

wider ze sînem wîbe

back to his woman

mit ganzem lîbe

with whole body

und doch anders ungesunden,

and yet otherwise unsound,

5595 als er in hete funden,

as he him had found,

mit geiseln zeslagen.

with whips beaten.

dochn dorfte er nimmer niht geklagen,

yet needed he never at-all lament,

sît im daz leben beliben was:

since to-him the life remained was:

wan er diss smerzen wol genas.

for he of-this pain well recovered.

5600 als sî in ane sach,

when she him at looked,

beide liebe und ungemach

both joy and discomfort

vuoren in ir herzen schrîn,

went into her heart's shrine,

doch sî niht wol ensament sîn.

though they not well together be.

als in diu guote

when him the good-one

5605 berunnen sach mit bluote,

overrun saw with blood,

dâ erlasch ir herze von:

there was-quenched her heart from:

wan sî was vil ungewon

for she was very unaccustomed

an im der herzesêre.

in him to-the heartache.

sî het in nie mêre

she had him never before

in solhen zühten gesehen.

in such chastisements seen.

5610

dâ bî was ir ein lieb geschehen,

there by was to-her a joy happened,

daz ez den sige an leide nam:

so-that it the victory over sorrow took:

ditz was daz er hin wider kam

this was that he thither back came

mit lebendigem lîbe.

with living body.

hie verkêrte sich dem wîbe

here turned itself to-the woman

5615

ir herzen trûebe,

her heart's gloom,

als ein glas, der ez wol schüebe,

as a glass, whoever it well should-scour,

daz von swarzer varwe

which with black color

bestrichen wære begarwe:

smeared were entirely:

sô diu abe kæme,

when that off should-come,

5620

sô wurde ez genæme

so would-become it pleasing

und licht daz ê vinsten was.

and bright which before dark was.

sus wart ir herze ein lûter glas,
thus became her heart a clear glass,

der erren sorgen beschaben
of-the earlier cares scraped

5625 unde wol ze liehte erhaben
and well to light raised

mit unvalscher wûnne,
with unfeigned bliss,

sam sî nie leit gewünne.
as-if she never sorrow had-got.

diu zwei gelieben wâren frô.
the two lovers were glad.

Êrecke sagten sî dô
to-Erec said they then

5630 genâde sô manecvalt;
thanks so manifold;

sî sprâchen 'herre, in iuwer gwalt
they said 'lord, into your power

suln wir uns für eigen geben:
shall we ourselves as bondsmen give:

von iu sô haben wir daz leben.'
from you so have we the life.'

Êrec antwurt dem ritter dô
Erec answered the knight then

5635 'herre, des wære ich immer frô,
'lord, of-that would-be I ever glad,

het ich iu frumes gedienet iht,
had I to-you of-benefit served at-all,

daz, ob got wil, noch geschiht,
which, if God wills, yet happens,

swâ ich es niht hân getân:
wherever I of-it not have done:

wan ich es guoten willen hân.
for I of-it good will have.

ich enbite iuch mêre

I ask you more

5640

deheiner slahte êre

of-no kind honor

ze widergelte an dirre zît,

as repayment at this time,

wan saget mir wer ir sît.’

but tell me who you are.’

Cadoc er sich nande

Cadoc be himself named

von Cafrîol dem lande

of Cafriol the land

5645

und sagte im wie daz wære ergangen

and told him how that were come-about

daz ie hæten gevangen

that ever had captured

die zwêne vâlände.

the two fiends.

er wolde varn von lande

he would fare from land

ze Britanje in daz lant,

to Britain into the land,

5650

daz er dâ wurde erkant,

that he there should-become known,

er und sîn âmîe,

he and his sweetheart,

von des küneges massenîe.

by the king's household.

nû was sîn rihte durch den walt:

now was his direct-way through the forest:

daz was den risen vor gezalt.

that was to-the giants before told.

5655

die wârñ im lange vîent gnuoc:

they were to-him long enemies enough:

welch schulde sî hin zuo im truoc,
what cause them thither to him bore,

des enist mir niht kunt,
that is to-me not known,

wan sî heten im zuo der stunt
but they had for-him at the time

5660 lâge al umbe den wec geleit
ambush all around the way laid

und viengen in da er zuo reit.
and captured him where he toward rode.

Cadoc Sent to Court, and Erec's Fall

III

Erec comforts Cadoc for his shame and sends him and his lady to Britain, asking only that they present themselves to the queen as sent by Erec. Riding back to Enite, Erec finds his wounds reopened, and as he dismounts he falls headlong as if dead. Enite laments until the forest echoes, reproaches God for his lack of mercy, calls on the beasts to devour her with her husband, and at last offers herself to Death.

als Êrec hâte vernomen
when Erec had heard

wie im sîn dinc was komen,
how to-him his affair was come,

durch schœnen list er sprach,
for fair cunning he said,

5665 im ze benemen sîn ungemach,
from-him to take-away his discomfort,

‘herre, missehabt iuch niht
‘lord, be-distressed yourself not

umbe dise aneschiht,
about this mishap,

daz iu die risen habent getân.
that to-you the giants have done.

jâ wirt es nieman erlân

indeed becomes of-it no-one spared

swer sô manheit üeben wil,

whoever so manhood practice will,

5670

in bringe geschiht ûf daz zil

unless-him bring chance to the point

da er sich schamen lîhte muoz:

where he himself be-ashamed easily must:

dar nâch wirt im es buoz.

there after becomes to-him of-it amends.

wie dicke ich wirs gehandelt bin!

how often I worse handled am!

mit dirre rede trôster in.

with this speech comforted-be him.

5675

er sprach 'ditz ist mîn rât,

he said 'this is my counsel,

daz ir durch nieman enlât

that you for no-one leave-off

ir enleistent iuwer vart,

you perform your journey,

als sî ûf geleget wart,

as it up laid was,

ze Britanje in daz lant.

to Britain into the land.

5680

daz ist alsô gewant

that is so disposed

daz ich iu wil zwâre sagen,

that I to-you will truly say,

ez mac ein ritter niht bejagen

it can a knight not win

in keinem lande anderswâ

in any land elsewhere

bezzet lop danne ouch dâ.

better praise than also there.

5685

swer ez dâ gevürdern kan,
whoever it there advance can,

der wirt schiere ein sælic man.
he becomes soon a fortunate man.

nû muote ich einer êre
now ask I one honor

von iu und ouch niht mêre:
from you and also not more:

5690 swenne ir kumet in daz lant
whenever you come into the land

sô nemt iur friundîn an die hant
so take your lady-love by the hand

und gêt für die künegîn
and go before the queen

und saget ir den dienst mîn.
and tell her the service my.

kündet ir iuwer sache gar,
make-known to-her your affair wholly,

5695 unde daz ich iuch ir dar
and that I you to-her thither

ze ingesinde habe gesant.
as retainers have sent.

Êrec bin ich genant:
Erec am I named:

vîl wol erkennet sî mich.
very well knows she me.'

ditz lobet er, unde schieden sich.
this promised he, and parted themselves.

5700 Cadoc fuor hin unde tete
Cadoc fared away and did

allez nâch Êrekes bete.
all according-to Erec's request.

er bôt der künegîn êre,
he offered the queen honor,

rehte nâch der lère,
right after the instruction,
 als er im hete vor gezalt:
as he to-him had before told:
 er ergap sich in ir gewalt.
he surrendered himself into her power.

5705

Êrecke wunscht ze lône
for-Erec wished as reward
 diu frouwe mit der krône,
the lady with the crown,
 diu vil edele künegîn,
the very noble queen,
 daz er sælic müeste sîn.
that he fortunate might be.

ouch schiet vil balde
also parted very quickly

5710

wider ûz dem walde
back out-of the forest
 der tugentrîche Êrec
the virtue-rich Erec
 unde suochte den wec
and sought the way
 da er die frowen Ênîten
where he the lady Enite
 sîn hiez bîten.
for-him bade wait.

5715

nû het er sich ervohten
now had he himself outfought
 daz im niene mohten
that to-him not-at-all could
 die wunden ganz bestân:
the wounds whole stay:
 die wâren wider ûf gegân.
they were again up gone.

5720 des bluotes was er gar ersigen,
of-the blood was he wholly drained,
 die slege heten in erwigen
the blows had him exhausted
 daz im diu varwe gar erbleich
that to-him the color wholly paled
 und im diu kraft sô nâch entweich
and from-him the strength so nearly withdrew
 daz er mit grôzer arbeit
that he with great hardship

5725 hin widere gereit
thither back rode
 dâ sîn diu frouwe het erbiten.
where for-him the lady had waited.
 solt er iht fürbaz sîn geriten,
should he at-all further have ridden,
 sô müeste er beliben sîn.
so must he perished have.
 daz wart hier an wol schîn.
that became here by well evident.

5730 als sich der halptôte man
when himself the half-dead man
 zuo neigen began,
toward to-bend began,
 als er erbeizen wolde,
as he dismount would,
 wande er ruowen solde,
for he rest should,
 dô was er sô betoubet
then was he so dazed

5735 daz im daz houbet
that to-him the head
 vor den füezen nider kam.
before the feet down came.

einen solhen val er nam

a such fall he took

daz er lac für tôt.

that he lay as dead.

nû huop sich ein bitter nôt

now raised itself a bitter distress

und alles leides galle

and of-all sorrow gall

5740

von disem valle

from this fall

in frowen Ênîten muote.

in lady Enite's spirit.

von jâmer huop diu guote

from misery raised the good-one

ein klage vil barmecliche,

a lament very piteously,

herzeriuwecliche.

heart-ruefully.

5745

ir ruof gap alsolhen schal

her cry gave such din

daz ir der walt widerhal.

that to-her the forest echoed.

nu enhalf ir niemen mêre

now helped her no-one more

klagen ir herzesêre

to-lament her heartache

niuwan der widergelt

except the requital

5750

den ir der walt ûz an daz velt

which to-her the forest out on the field

mit gelîchem galme bôt.

with like resounding offered.

der half ir klagen ir nôt:

that helped her to-lament her distress:

wan ir was niemen mêre bî.

for to-her was no-one more by.

5755 diu guote, nû viel sî

the good-one, now fell she

über in unde kusten.

over him and kissed-him.

dar nâch sluoc sî sich zen brusten

there after struck she herself on-the breasts

und kustin aber unde schrê.

and kissed-him again and cried.

ir ander wort was wê owê.

her other word was woe alas.

5760 daz hâr sî vaste ûz brach

the hair she fast out tore

an ir lîbe sî sich rach

on her body she herself avenged

nâch wîplichem site:

after womanly custom:

wan hie rechent sî sich mite.

for here avenge they themselves with.

swaz in ze leide geschiht,

whatever to-them to sorrow happens,

5765 dâ wider tuont die guoten niht,

there against do the good-ones nothing,

wan daz siz phlegent enblanden

but that they-it are-wont to-lay-on

ougen unde handen

eyes and hands

mit trâhenen und mit hantslegen,

with tears and with hand-blows,

wan sî anders niht enmegen.

for they otherwise not can.

dâ von müez er unsælic sîn 5770
there from may he unblessed be

(des wünschet im der wille mîn)
(that wishes him the will my)

swer den wîben leide tuot:
whoever to-the women sorrow does:

wan ez ist manlîch noch guot.
for it is manly nor good.

frowe Ênîte zurnde vaste an got.
lady Enite raged hard at God.

‘herre, ist ditz dîn gebot 5775
‘lord, (if)-is this thy command

daz ein ritter alsô guot
that a knight so good

durch sînen reinen muot
for his pure spirit

sînen lîp hât verlorn,
his life has lost,

sô hât ein wunderlîcher zorn
so has a strange anger

dîne erbarmunge genomen. 5780
thy mercy taken.

daz ich hân von dir vernomen
what I have of thee heard

daz dû barmherzic sîst,
that thou merciful art,

wie swachez bilde dû des gîst
how poor example thou of-it givest

an mir vil armen!
in me very poor-one!

mahtû dich nû erbarmen 5785
(if)-canst-thou thyself now pity

über mich, sich, des ist zît.
over me, look, of-that is time.

nû warte wâ mîn man lît
now look where my man lies

gar oder halp tôt.
wholly or half dead.

nu erbarme dich, des ist nôt:
now have-pity thyself, of-that is need:

5790 wan ich ein tôtez herze hân.
for I a dead heart have.

nû sich wie trûric ich stân.
now see how sad I stand.

erbarm dich, herre, über mich:
have-pity thyself, lord, over me:

wande ez ist erbarmeclich
for it is pitiable

daz ich verweistez wîp
that I orphaned woman

5795 langer habe mînen lîp
longer have my life

in solhem ellende.
in such exile.

wan daz ân missewende
but that without blemish

allez dîn werc stât,
all thy work stands,

herre, ich zige dich missetât
lord, I would-accuse thee of-misdeed

5800 daz dû mich langer leben lâst,
that thou me longer live lettest,

sît dû mir den benomen hât
since thou from-me him taken hast

dem ich eine solde leben.
for-whom I alone should live.

mahtû des, herre, bilde geben

(if)-canst-thou of-that, lord, proof give

daz dir aller herzen grunt

that to-thee of-all hearts ground

ist sihteclichen kunt

is visibly known

5805

(wan dir mac niht verborgen sîn),

(for from-thee may nothing bidden be),

daz tuo durch dîne bärmdē schîn.

that make for thy mercy evident.

unde habe ich mînen man

and (if)-have I my man

sît ich in von êrste gewan

since I him from first got

verworht an ihtes ihte

wronged in anything's aught

5810

mit muote od von geschihte,

with intent or by chance,

alsô daz ez im wol gezimt

so that it to-him well befits

ob mirn dîn gwalt danne nimt,

if from-me-him thy power then takes,

daz selbe reht vinde ich mir:

the same right find I for-me:

wan ichs von rehte danne enbir.

for I-of-it by right then forgo.

5815

hân aber ich des niht getân,

(if)-have however I that not done,

des soltû mich geniezen lân:

of-that shalt-thou me profit let:

herre, sô erbarme dich

lord, so have-pity thyself

durch dîne güete über mich

for thy goodness over me

5820 unde heiz mir in leben.

and bid for-me him live.

wil aber dû mirs niht wider geben,

(if)-wilt however thou to-me-him not back give,

sô wis, herre got, gemant

so be, lord God, reminded

daz aller werlt ist erkant

which to-all world is known

ein wort daz dû gesprochen hâst,

a word that thou spoken hast,

5825 und bite dich daz duz stæte lâst,

and ask thee that thou-it steadfast lettest,

daz ein man und sîn wîp

that a man and his woman

sulen wesen ein lîp,

shall be one body,

und ensunder uns niht:

and part us not:

wan mir anders geschiht

for to-me otherwise happens

5830 von dir ein unrechter gwalt.

from thee an unjust force.

sî dîn erbärmde manecvalt,

(if)-be thy mercy manifold,

sô hilf ouch mir des tôdes hier.

so help also me to-the death here.

wâ nû hungerigiu tier,

where now hungry beasts,

bêde wolf unde ber,

both wolf and bear,

- lewe, iuwer einz kume her 5835
lion, of-you one come hither
- und ezze uns beide,
and eat us both,
- daz sich sô iht scheide
lest itself so at-all part
- unser lîp mit zwein wegen!
our body by two ways!
- und ruoche got unser sêlen phlegen,
and deign God our souls to-keep,
- die enscheident sich benamen niht, 5840
they part themselves assuredly not,
- swaz dem lîbe geschiht.’
whatever to-the body happens.’
- dô sir deheinez komen sach,
when she-of-them none come saw,
- sî ruofte in aber unde sprach
she called them again and said
- ‘ir tier vil ungewizzen,
‘you beasts very witless,
- nû habt ir erbizzen 5845
now have you bitten-dead
- manec schâf unde swîn
many-a sheep and swine
- und armer liute vihelîn
and poor people’s little-cattle
- die ius niht engunden
who to-you-of-it not granted
- noch überwinden kunden.
nor prevent could.
- wærent ir nû wîse, 5850
were you now wise,

ir holtent iuwer spîse

you would-fetch your food

hie mit vollem munde:

here with full mouth:

wan ich iu mîn wol gunde:

for I to-you of-me well would-grant:

dâ von müest ich iu wol gezemen.

there from must I to-you well suit.

5855 nû kumt, ir mugt mich gerne nemen.

now come, you may me gladly take.

wâ sît ir nû? jâ bin ich hie.'

where are you now? indeed am I here.'

daz laden sî niht vervie

the inviting her not availed

daz dehein ez vernæme

that any it should-bear

oder dar kæme.

or thither should-come.

5860 ob aber deheinez dar kæme

if however any thither should-come

und ob ez rehte vernæme

and if it rightly should-bear

ir trûrige gebâre,

her sad bearing,

sô weiz ich wol zwâre,

so know I well truly,

swie hungere ez wære,

however hungry it were,

ez müeste ir die swære 5865
it must her the grief

ze jungest helfen weinen
at last help weep

und daz wol erscheinen
and that well show

daz sî ze erbarmenne was.
that she to pity was.

über ir willen sî genas.
against her will she survived.

alsô sî rehte ersach 5870
when she rightly saw

daz ir ze sterben niene geschach,
that to-her to die not-at-all happened,

do begunde sî von êrste klagen
then began she from first to-lament

und het sich selben nâch erslagen.
and had herself self nearly slain.

man sach nie jâmer merre.
one saw never misery greater.

sî sprach 'lieber herre, 5875
she said 'dear lord,

sît ich dich muoz verliesen,
since I thee must lose,

sô wil ich hie verkiesen
so will I here renounce

man immer mêre,
man ever more,

wan einen den ich sêre
but one whom I sorely

in mînem herzen minne 5880
in my heart love

von allem mînem sinne.
with all my mind.

dem bin ich gâhes worden holt.
to-him am I suddenly become devoted.

hete ich umbe den versolt
had I from him deserved

daz im geviele mîn lîp,
that him should-please my person,

5885 dem wolde ich sîn ein stætez wîp.
to-him would I be a constant woman.

vîl lieber Tôt, nû meine ich dich.
very dear Death, now mean I thee.

von dîner lêre kumt daz ich
from thy teaching comes that I

alsô verkêre den site
so turn-about the custom

daz ich wîp mannes bite.
that I woman of-man ask.

5890 nâch dîner minne ist mir sô nôt.
for thy love is to-me so need.

nu geruoche mîn, vîl reiner Tôt.
now deign of-me, very pure Death.

owê wie wol ich arme
alas how well I poor-one

gezim an dînem arme!
befit in thy arm!

dû bist vîl wol zuo mir gehât.
thou art very well to me wedded.

5895 wan nimest dû mich enzât?
why-not takest thou me betimes?

sît daz dû mich doch nemen muost,
since that thou me yet take must,

sô rât ich daz duz enzât tuost.
so counsel I that thou-it betimes dost.

ich gezim dir wol ze wîbe.
I befit thee well to woman.

ich hân ez noch an dem lîbe,

I have it still on the body,

beide schœne unde jugent.

both beauty and youth.

5900

ich bin an der besten tugent.

I am at the best virtue.

dir mac mit mir niht wesen ze gâch.

to-thee may with me not be too hasty.

nû waz touc ich dir her nâch,

now what avail I to-thee here after,

sô beide alter unde leit

when both age and sorrow

mir schœne unde jugent verseit?

to-me beauty and youth denies?

5905

nû waz sol ich dir danne?

now what shall I to-thee then?

noch zæme ich guotem manne?

still would-befit I good man.'

Enite's Lament, and the Sword

IV

When Death will not take her, Enite curses him for taking the best and letting those the world wishes dead grow old. She blames herself: the sigh she let fall in bed set Erec on this journey, and like a fool she could not bear her good fortune. She likens herself to a roadside linden that bears no better fruit in a garden. Resolved to die, she draws Erec's sword and curses it for betraying the man who trusted it.

dô sî der rede vil getete

when she of-the speech much made

und sî den Tôt mit ir bete

and she the Death with her request

5910 niht mohte überwinden

not could overcome

noch ir willen vinden

nor her will find

daz er sî næme in sînen gwalt,

that he her should-take into his power,

vil wîplîchen sin dô schalt

very womanly she-him then scolded

als ir der wille gebôt.

as her the will commanded.

5915 sî sprach 'wê dir, vil übelers Tôt!

she said 'woe to-thee, very evil Death!

daz dû verfluochet sîst!

that thou cursed be!

wie manec bilde dû gîst

how many-a proof thou givest

dîner unbescheidenheit!

of-thy unreason!

diu werlt doch wâr von dir seit,

the world yet true of thee says,

dû sîst mit valsche beladen.

5920

thou art with falseness laden.

dû vlîzest dich ûf maneges schaden

thou appliest thyself to many-a-one's harm

dem nimmer solde leit geschehen.

to-whom never should sorrow happen.

des hân ich vil von dir gesehen.

of-that have I much from thee seen.

dû hâst vil böesen râtgeben:

thou hast very evil counselors:

wan dû gâhes nimst daz leben

5925

for thou suddenly takest the life

einem alsolhen man

from-a such man

den diu werlt niht überwinden kan,

whom the world not overcome can,

und gebeitest eime an sîner stat

and sparest one in his stead

dem ie diu werlt des tôdes bat

for-whom ever the world the death asked

unde lâst den werden alt.

5930

and lettest that-one become old.

dû zeigest dînen gewalt

thou showest thy power

unbescheidenlîchen.

unreasonably.

einen tugentrîchen

a virtue-rich-one

hâst dû hie gevellet

hast thou here felled

unde mich gesellet

5935

and me joined

anders dan dû soldest,

otherwise than thou shouldst,

ob dû gedienen woldest

if thou earn wouldst

daz ich dir immer spræche wol.

that I of-thee ever should-speak well.

nun weiz ich war ich armiu sol.

now-not know I whither I poor-one shall.

5940 unheiles wart ich geborn:

of-ill-luck was I born:

wan nû hân ich verlorn

for now have I lost

beide sêle unde lîp,

both soul and body,

als von rehte sol ein wîp

as by right shall a woman

von sô grôzer missetât,

for so great misdeed,

5945 diu ir man verrâten hât

who her man betrayed has

als ich mînen herren hân.

as I my lord have.

des tôdes wære er hie erlân,

of-the death would-have-been he here spared,

ob ich in drûf niht hæte brâht

if I him thereto not had brought

jâ het er im nie gedâht

indeed would-have he for-himself never thought

5950 dirre leidigen vart,

of-this woeful journey,

het ich den klagenden sûft bewart

had I the lamenting sigh withheld

den ich nam sô tiefe

which I took so deep

dô ich wânde er sliefe,

when I thought he slept,

des tages dô ich bî im lac.

on-the day when I by him lay.

daz verfluochet sî der tac

that cursed be the day

5955

daz ich die rede ruorte!

that I the matter touched!

wan ich mîn heil zefuorte,

for I my weal scattered,

vil grôze êre unde gemach.

very great honor and comfort.

owê wie übel mir geschach!

alas how ill to-me happened!

nû waz wolde ich tumbe

now what would I foolish-one

5960

ze redenne dar umbe?

to speak there about?

swie mîn herze wolde leben,

however my heart would live,

jâ hete mir got gegeben

indeed had to-me God given

daz mîn dinc ze wunsche stuont.

that my affair to wish stood.

ich tete als die tôren tuont,

I did as the fools do,

5965

unwîses muotes,

of-unwise spirit,

die êren unde guotes

who honors and goods

in selben erbunnen

to-them selves begrudge

und niht vertragen kunnen

and not bear can

5970 sô ir dinc vil schône stât

when their affair very fairly stands

und leistent durch des tiuvels rât

and perform for the devil's counsel

dâ von ir heil zerstoeret wirt:

there from their weal destroyed becomes:

wan er ir êren gerne enbirt.

for he their honors gladly forgoes.

owê liebiu muoter

alas dear mother

5975 unde vater guoter!

and father good!

nû ist iu ze dirre stunt

now is to-you at this hour

mîn grôzer kumber vil unkunt.

my great affliction very unknown.

ez was iuwer beider wân

it was your both expectation

mîn dinc vil wol gebezzert hân:

my affair very well bettered have:

5980 ouch was ez vil wænlîch,

also was it very likely,

dô ir mich einem kûnege rîch

when you me to-a king rich

gâbet ze wîbe.

gave to woman.

der wân ist mînem lîbe

the expectation is for-my person

verkêret zungewinne.

turned to-loss.

in triegent sîne sinne,

him deceive his senses,

5985

swem daz ze wendenne ist gedâht,

to-whom that to avert is intended,

ez enwerde volbrâht,

it be accomplished,

swaz von gote geschaffen ist:

whatever by God ordained is:

dâ für gehœret kein list,

there against avails no cunning,

man müeze im sînen willen lân.

one must to-him his will let.

5990

der muoz ouch an mir ergân.

that must also on me come-about.

ich muoz et unsælic sîn.

I must just unblessed be.

daz ist mir wol worden schîn

that is to-me well become evident

an grimmeclîcher arbeit,

in grim hardship,

der ich vil unz her erleit.

of-which I much until now suffered.

5995

er hât mir armen wîbe

he has to-me poor woman

verteilet an dem lîbe:

condemned in the body:

des bin ich wol innen brâht.

of-that am I well aware brought.

wes im zer sêle sî gedâht,

what for-him to-the soul be intended,

6000 des enmac ich wizzen niht.

that can I know not.

swaz dem lîbe nû geschiht,

whatever to-the body now happens,

ze ringer klage mir daz stât,

to light lament to-me that stands,

wirt iedoch der sêle rât.

(if)-becomes yet to-the soul help.

daz ich dicke hân vernomen,

what I often have heard,

6005 des bin ich an ein ende komen:

of-that am I at an end come:

swaz man dem unsæligen tuot,

whatever one to-the unblest-one does,

sîn gelücke wirt doch nimmer guot.

his luck becomes yet never good.

swer die linden von dem wege

whoever the linden from the way

næme ûz unwerder phlege

should-take out-of unworthy care

6010 und sî in sînen garten sazte

and it in his garden set

unde sî mit bûwe ergazte

and it with tillage compensated

daz sî in dürrer erde

that it in dry earth

stüende unz dar unwerde,

had-stood until then unvalued,

und daz dar ûf tæte
and that there upon should-do

daz er gedâht hæte
that he intended had 6015

daz er ir wolde warten
that he it would tend

in sînen boumgarten
in his orchard

ze guotem obezboume,
as good fruit-tree,

der enmôhte von eim troume
he could by a dream

niht sêrer sîn betrogen:
not more-sorely be deceived: 6020

wan dâ wurde niht an erzogen,
for there would-be nothing on raised,

swie vlîzic man ir wære,
however diligent one to-it were,

daz sî bezzer obez bære
that it better fruit should-bear

danne ouch ê nâch ir art,
than also before according-to its kind,

ê daz sî ûz gegraben wart
before that it out dug was 6025

ûz bæser erde von dem wege,
out-of poor earth from the way,

dâ sî schein in swacher phlege.
where it appeared in poor care.

swie schœne und edel boum sî ist,
however fair and noble tree it is,

michel graben unde mist
much digging and dung

mac man dar an verliesen.
may one there on lose. 6030

des sol man bilde kiesen

of-that shall one example discern

an mir vil gotes armen,

in me very God's poor-one,

und möhte de werlt erbarmen

and might the world move-to-pity

mîn vil grôz ungeval.

my very great misfortune.

6035 und krônde mich diu werlt al

and should-crown me the world all

ze frouwen über elliu wîp

as lady over all women

sô hât doch got den mînen lîp

so has yet God the my person

sô unsælic getân

so unblessed made

daz ich kumber muoz hân

that I affliction must have

6040 al die wîle unde ich lebe.

all the while that I live.

got sî der mirs ein ende gebe.

God be who to-me-of-it an end gives.

sît mir mîn dinc alsô ist komen

since to-me my affair so is come

daz mir got hât benomen

that from-me God has taken

den allerliebsten man

the all-dearest man

6045 den ie frouwe gewan

whom ever lady got

und mîn der Tôt niene wil,

and of-me the Death not-at-all wants,

des selben neme er im ein zil:

of-that same take he for-himself an end:

diu stæte undr uns beiden

the constancy between us both

sol sich sô niht scheiden:

shall itself so not part:

den list ich vil wol vinde

the device I very well find

6050

daz er mich ze ingesinde

that he me as household-member

sunder danc nemen muoz.

without will take must.

war umbe soldich sînen fuoz

what for should-I his foot

sô vlîzeclîche suochen

so diligently seek

sît er mîn niht wil ruochen?

since he for-me not will care?

6055

dar umbe ich in sô sêre bat,

there for I him so sorely asked,

des mac ich mich an dirre stat

that can I myself on this spot

selbe vil wol gewern.

myself very well grant.

ich wils ouch langer niht enbern,

I will-of-it also longer not forgo,

ez enwerde volbrâht.

it unless-be accomplished.

6060

entriwen, ich hân nû wol gedâht.'

truly, I have now well thought.'

diu hant ir gegen der erde sleif,

the hand to-her toward the earth slipped,

ir mannes swert sî begreif

her man's sword she grasped

und zôch ez ûz der scheide,

and drew it out-of the sheath,

- 6065 als sî sich vor leide
as she herself for sorrow
 mit im wolde erstechen
with it would stab-to-death
 und kintliche errechen
and childishly avenge
 sich über ir mannes tôt,
herself for her man's death,
 wan daz irz got verbôt
but that her-it God forbade
- 6070 unde sî gefriste
and her preserved
 mit gnædeclîchem liste
with gracious device
 dar an daz sî begunde
there in that she began
 dem swerte dâ ze stunde
the sword there at once
 fluochen dô siz gesach.
to-curse when she-it saw.
- 6075 daz ir herze niht zerbrach
that her heart not broke
 von leide, daz was wunder.
from sorrow, that was wonder.
 sich teilte dô besunder
itself divided then apart
 von des jâmers grimme
from the misery's grimness
 rehte enzwei ir stimme,
right in-two her voice,
- 6080 hôhe unde nidere.
high and low.

der walt gap hinwidere

the forest gave back

vorhteclich swaz sî geschrê.

fearfully whatever she cried.

dô lûte dicke owê owê!

then sounded often alas alas!

vil lûte schrîent sî sprach,

very loud crying she spoke,

dô sî daz swert ane sach,

when she the sword at looked,

6085

mit klâgelîchem munde

with lamentable mouth

‘verfluochet sî diu stunde

‘cursed be the hour

daz man dich ie smiden began!

that one thee ever to-forge began!

dû hâst ertœtet mînen man.

thou hast killed my man.

daz im der lîp ist benomen

that from-him the life is taken

6090

daz ist von dînen schulden komen.

that is from thy fault come.

jâ hæte er anderswâ noch hie

indeed would-have he elsewhere nor here

dehein dinc bestanden nie,

any thing undertaken ever,

wan daz erz tete ûf dînen trôst.

but that he-it did upon thy trust.

sus hâstû mich sîn belôst.

thus hast-thou me of-him bereft.

6095

er reit vil manege reise

he rode very many-a journey

sîns lîbes enfreise,

of-his life in-peril,

die er hæte verlân,

which he would-have left-off,

wær sî dar ûf niht getân

were it there on not done

6100 daz mîn lieber herre

that my dear lord

dir getriute verre.

thee trusted far.

vîl dicke er jach dû wærest guot:

very often he declared thou wert good:

nû hâst dû dich an im missehuot:

now hast thou thyself toward him misbehaved:

ichn weiz ob ez dich riuwe.

I-not know whether it thee rue.

6105 dû hâst dîne triuwe

thou hast thy faith

gar an im zerbrochen.

wholly toward him broken.

daz wirt an dir gerochen.

that becomes on thee avenged.

ez sol dich niht sô ringe stân:

it shall thee not so lightly stand:

dû muost noch mordes mê begân.'

thou must yet of-murder more commit.'

Count Oringles

V

As Enite turns the point to her breast, Count Oringles of Limors, riding through the forest, hears her cries and wrenches the sword from her. She tells him how her husband died. Struck by her beauty, the count takes counsel with his knights, who agree that he should marry her. He tells her that grief avails nothing and that she will be rich as his countess. Enite refuses: she will take no man unless God gives her husband Erec back to her.

vil wol bewârte sî daz wort

very well proved she the word

6110

unde kêrte daz ort

and turned the point

engegen ir brüsten,

toward her breasts,

nâch tôdes gelüsten,

after death's desire,

als sî sich wolde ervellen dran.

as she herself would fall-dead thereon.

nû kam geriten ein man

now came ridden a man

6115

der sis erwande,

who her-of-it prevented,

den got dar gesande.

whom God thither sent.

ditz was ein edeler herre,

this was a noble lord,

ein grâve: vil unverre

a count: very not-far

sô stuont sîn hûs von dan.

so stood his house from thence.

6120

Oringles hiez der rîche man,

Oringles was-called the mighty man,

von Limors geboren.

of Limors born.

den hete got dar zuo erkorn

him had God there to chosen

daz er sî solde bewarn.

that he her should protect.

6125 * * *

(lacuna)

ir ze heile reit er durch den walt:

to-her to weal rode he through the forest:

nâch wiu, des ist mir niht gezalt,

after what, that is to-me not told,

wan daz ich betrahte

but that I consider

in mînes herzen ahte,

in my heart's reckoning,

6130 ez kom von ir sælekeit

it came from her blessedness

daz er des tages ie ûz gereit.

that he on-that day ever out rode.

er fuorte mit im ritter gnuoc.

he led with him knights enough.

von geschihten in truoc

by chance him bore

in den walt der selbe wec

into the forest the same way

6135 dâ der ritter Êrec

where the knight Erec

in sô grôzem kumber lac

in so great affliction lay

und sîn diu frouwe Ênîte phlac.

and of-him the lady Enite took-care.

und dannoch dô der herre

and still when the lord

von in was vil verre,

from them was very far,

dô gehôrte er daz wîp

then heard he the woman

6140

mit ruofe quelen ir lîp,

with outcry torment her body,

und als er ir stimme vernam,

and when he her voice heard,

von wunder er dar kam,

from wonder he thither came,

ze diu daz er gesæhe

to that that he should-see

waz wonders dâ geschæhe,

what of-wonder there should-happen,

6145

ie mitten unde sî daz swert

even meanwhile as she the sword

gegen ir brüsten wert

to her breasts ward

sich zertoeten hâte gesat.

herself to-kill had set.

nû kam er rîtende an die stat:

now came he riding to the place:

und als er ir gebærde sach,

and when he her demeanor saw,

6150

daz sî gegen dem lîbe stach,

that she toward the body thrust,

dô wart im vome rosse gâch:

then became to-him from-the horse hasty:

wand er vorhte sich vil nâch

for he feared himself very nearly

an der rede versûmet hân,

in the matter delayed have,

6155 daz der stich wære getân.

that the thrust were done.

er vienc sî gâhes an sich

he caught her suddenly to himself

und erwante den stich.

and turned-aside the thrust.

ûz der hant er irz brach:

out-of the hand he from-her-it wrenched:

er warf ez von im unde sprach

he threw it from him and said

6160 'saget, wunderlîchez wîp,

'say, strange woman,

war umbe woltent ir den lîp

what for would you the life

selbe hân ersterbet

yourself have killed

und an iu hân verderbet

and in you have destroyed

daz schœniste bilde

the fairest image

6165 daz zam oder wilde

which tame or wild

ie mannes ouge gesach?

ever man's eye saw?

diu frouwe Ênîte kûme sprach

the lady Enite scarcely spoke

'nû sehent ir, lieber herre,

'now see you, dear lord,

selbe waz mir werre.'

yourself what to-me troubles.'

6170 'woltent ir iu tuon den tât?'

'would you to-you do the death?'

'herre, des gienc mir doch nôt.'

'lord, of-that went to-me yet need.'

‘was er iwer âmîs od iuwer man?’

‘was he your lover or your husband?’

‘beide.’ ‘nû saget an,

‘both.’ ‘now tell on,

wer hât in erslagen?’

who has him slain?’

nu begunde frouwe Ênîte sagen

now began lady Enite to-tell

6175

vil rehte diu mære

very rightly the tidings

wie ez im komen wære.

how it to-him come were.

nu begunde der grâve ahten

now began the count to-consider

und bî im betrahten

and by himself to-reflect

daz er bî sînen zîten

that he in his times

6180

nâhen noch wîten

near nor far

nie schoener wîp hete gesehen:

ever fairer woman had seen:

ouch gunden ims die ritter jehen.

also began to-him-of-it the knights to-agree.

die frouwen er von im lie.

the lady he from him left.

zeiner kurzen sprâche er gie.

to-a short parley he went.

6185

er sprach ze den gesellen sîn

he said to the comrades his

‘ein dinc ist wol schîn,

‘one thing is well evident,

daz muget ir wol schouwen

that may you well behold

an dirre frouwen.

in this lady.

6190 swâ sî der ritter habe genomen

wherever her the knight has taken

oder swie sî her sî komen,

or however she hither be come,

sî ist benamen ein edel wîp:

she is assuredly a noble woman:

daz zeigt ir wünneclicher lîp.

that shows her lovely person.

nû sprechet, waz ist iuwer rât?

now speak, what is your counsel?

6195 ir wizzet wol wie ez mir stât,

you know well how it for-me stands,

daz ich âne wîp bin.

that I without woman am.

nû rætet vaste mir mîn sin

now counsels firmly to-me my mind

daz ich sî ze wîbe neme.

that I her to woman take.

mich dunket daz sî wol gezeme

to-me seems that she well befits

6200 ze frouwen über mîn lant.

as lady over my land.

ich habe kurze an ir erkant,

I have shortly in her perceived,

sî ist mir gnuoc wol geborn.

she is for-me enough well born.

ouch hât sî mir erkorn

also has her for-me chosen

mînes herzen rât ze wîbe.

my heart's counsel to woman.

nû bite ich daz ez belibe

now ask I that it remain

6205

in iuerm râte âne haz

in your counsel without enmity

(vil gerne wil ich immer daz

(very gladly will I ever that

umb iuch verschulden unz ich lebe),

toward you repay while I live),

dazz iu âne widerstrebe

that-it to-you without resistance

geliche wol gevalle.'

alike well please.'

6210

nû rieten sî imz alle.

now counseled they him-it all.

des râtes was der grâve frô.

of-the counsel was the count glad.

die frowen Ênîten trôster dô

the lady Enite comforted-he then

vlîzeclîche unde wol,

diligently and well,

sô man den friunt nâch leide sol.

as one the friend after sorrow shall.

6215

er sprach 'wünneclîchez wîp,

he said 'lovely woman,

war umbe quelent ir den lîp

what for torment you the body

sô grimmeclîchen sêre?

so grimly sorely?

frowe, durch gotes êre

lady, for God's honor

und ouch durch mich sô tuot daz,

and also for me so do that,

6220

gehabet iuch ein lützel baz

bear yourself a little better

danne iu doch sî geschehen.

than to-you yet has happened.

ich muoz iu des von schulden jehen

I must to-you of-that by right grant

daz ir wîplichen tuot,

that you womanly do,

6225 und dunket mich von herzen guot

and seems to-me from heart good

daz ir klagent iuvern man:

that you lament your man:

wan dâ schînet iuwer triuwe an.

for there shows your faithfulness in.

doch habt irs nû genuoc getân,

yet have you-of-it now enough done,

wande ez mag iuch niht vervân.

for it may you not avail.

6230 ditz ist der schœniste list

this is the fairest device

für schaden, der et gefrunt ist,

against harm, which just done is,

daz man sichs getrœste enzît;

that one himself-of-it comfort betimes;

wan langiu riuwe niht engît

for long rue nothing gives

wan ein bekumberten lîp.

but a troubled body.

6235 dar an gedenket, schœnez wîp.

there on think, fair woman.

und möhtent ir im daz leben

and could you to-him the life

mit weinene wider geben,

with weeping back give,

sô hulfen wir iu alle klagen

so would-help we you all lament

und iuwer swære glîche tragen:

and your grief alike bear:

des mac doch leider niht geschehen.

that can yet alas not happen.

6240

als ouch ich ez hân ersehen,

as also I it have seen,

ob ich ez rehte erkiesen kan,

if I it rightly discern can,

sô enwas iuwer man

so was your man

weder sô edel noch sô rîch,

neither so noble nor so rich,

sô starc noch sô wætlich,

so strong nor so handsome,

6245

noch sô ahtebære,

nor so estimable,

ir mügt iuwer swære

you may for-your grief

wol werden ergetzet:

well become compensated:

er wirdet iu ersetzet,

he becomes to-you replaced,

ob ir mir gevolgic sît.

if you to-me compliant are.

6250

mich wæne in sæliger zît

I think in blessed time

ze iu got her gesendet hât.

to you God hither sent has.

iuwer wirt vil guot rât.

of-you becomes very good remedy.

daz dinc dâ ein man

the thing where a man

6255 grôzen schaden nimet an,

great harm takes on,

daz verkêret sich vil ringe

that turns itself very easily

ze lieberme dinge;

to dearer thing;

als sich, frouwe, iuwer wân

as itself, lady, your expectation

hiute hie hât getân:

today here has done:

6260 der muoz sich verkêren

that must itself turn

ze michelen êren.

to great honors.

sich wandelt iuwer armuot

itself changes your poverty

benamen hie in michel guot.

assuredly here into great wealth.

ich bin ein grâve genant,

I am a count named,

6265 joch herre über ein rîchez lant:

and lord over a rich land:

dar über sult ir frouwe sîn.

there over shall you lady be.

seht, nû wirt iu wol schîn

see, now becomes to-you well evident

daz iu iuwers mannes tôt frumt

that to-you your man's death profits

und iu ze allem heile kumt:

and to-you to all weal comes:

6270 wan iu nû êrste wol geschiht.

for to-you now first well happens.

ich enhave wîbes niht;

I have of-woman none;

ze wîbe wil ich iuch nemen:

to woman will I you take:

des lebennes mag iuch baz gezemen

the life may you better befit

danne ir mit eim manne vart

than you with a man fare

über lant unbewart,

over land unguarded,

6275

nâch keinem iuerm rehte.

after no your right.

ritter unde knehte,

knights and warriors,

frouwen, rîche dienstman,

ladies, rich vassals,

sô ir nie grâve mêre gewan,

as of-them never count more got,

die mache ich iu undertân,

them make I to-you subject,

6280

mugt ir noch iuwer weinen lân.'

(if)-may you yet your weeping leave.'

nu enmohte im diu guote

now not-could him the good-one

vor grôzem unmuote

for great distress

und vor herzensêre

and for heartache

geantwurten mêre,

answer more,

6285

sî sprach sô sî daz herze twanc

she said as her the heart compelled

'lât, herre, die rede lanc;

'leave, lord, the speech long;

herre, lâit iuvern spot

lord, leave your mockery

mit mir armen durch got.

with me poor-one for God.

6290 und sît ir rîch, daz ist iu guot.

and (if)-are you rich, that is to-you good.

erkennet, herre, mînen muot:

know, lord, my purpose:

des wil ich iu kurze bejehen:

that will I to-you briefly declare:

ez mac nimmer geschehen

it can never happen

daz ich iuwer wîp werde

that I your woman become

6295 oder iemens ûf der erde

or anyone's upon the earth

über kurz od über lanc,

over short or over long,

ez geschehe sunder mînen danc,

it happen against my will,

mirn gebe got wider mînen man.

unless-to-me give God back my man.

den êrsten den ich ie gewan,

the first whom I ever got,

6300 der muoz mir ouch der jungest sîn.

he must to-me also the last be.

geloubetz, herre: ez wirt wol schîn.'

believe-it, lord: it becomes well evident.'

The Bier at Limors, and the Count's Table

VI

The count has Erec's body carried to Limors on a litter, with watchers and candles until the burial. Unable to wait, he summons bishops and abbots and marries Enite that evening against her will. At supper she will not leave the bier for his messengers, so he fetches her himself. She weeps over the table, and he reproaches her: yesterday she was poor and unknown, today she is a mighty countess, and a poor man's death is well repaid.

der grâve sprach zen rittern dô

the count said to-the knights then

‘diu wîp sulen reden alsô.

‘the women shall speak so.

dâ von man irz niht wîzen sol:

there from one to-her-it not blame shall:

sî bekêret sich wol

she turns herself well

6305

von ir unmuote.

from her distress.

ich bringez wol ze guote.’

I bring-it well to good.’

der frouwen was er vil frô.

of-the lady was he very glad.

die knehte hiez er houwen dô,

the servants bade he bew then,

alle die dâ wâren,

all who there were,

6310

eine rosbâren.

a horse-litter.

diu wart vil schiere bereit.

that became very soon ready.

dar ûf wart dô geleit

there upon was then laid

Êrec für einen tôten man.

Erec as a dead man.

6315 ûf Limors fuorten sî in dan,

to Limors bore they him thence,

und gwan im ze wahte

and got for-him as watch

alle die er mahte

all whom he could

und hiez im licht gewinnen

and bade for-him lights get

diu ob im solden brinnen

which above him should burn

6320 unz daz man in begrüebe.

until that one him should-bury.

bitterlîcher trüebe

with-bitter gloom

gienc der frowen Ênîten nôt:

went the lady Enite's distress:

wan sî hete in für tôt.

for she held him as dead.

dem wirte dô von ir geschach,

to-the host then from her happened,

6325 dô er ir schœne rehte ersach,

when he her beauty rightly saw,

daz er sô lange stunde

that he so long time

erbeiten niene kunde

wait not-at-all could

unz ir man wurde begraben,

until her man should-be buried,

si enwurde der naht erhaben

she unless-were that night raised

ze frouwen sînem lande,

as lady to-his land,

swiez doch dûhte schande

however-it yet seemed disgrace

alle sîne dienstman.

to-all his vassals.

sîne boten sande er dan

his messengers sent he thence

allenthalben in daz lant,

everywhere into the land,

daz im koemen ze hant

that to-him should-come at once

die herren die daz ambet hânt

the lords who the office have

daz sî die gotes ê begânt,

that they the God's law perform,

daz sî im wurde gegeben,

that she to-him should-be given,

wan er entriut nie mê geleben.

for he trusted never more to-live.

sô grôz ist der minne maht:

so great is the love's might:

er wolde et briuten der naht.

he would just wed that night.

bischove und abbte kômen dar

bishops and abbots came thither

und diu phafheit vil gar,

and the clergy very wholly,

swaz man der mohte berîten

whatever one of-them could fetch

in des tages zîten.

in the day's times.

6330

6335

6340

6345

swiez der frouwen wære

however-it to-the lady were

widermüete und swære,

repugnant and grievous,

sî wart im sunder danc gegeben.

she was to-him against will given.

ez half ouch niht ir widerstreben:

it helped also not her resisting:

6350 er wolde sî ze wîbe hân.

he would her to woman have.

got hâte den gwalt und er den wân.

God had the power and he the expectation.

nû was ouch ezzennes zît.

now was also of-eating time.

daz liez der wirt âne strît:

that let the host without dispute:

wan er die naht gerne sach.

for he the night gladly saw.

6355 er gedâht, des lîhte niht geschach,

he thought, which perhaps not happened,

mit ir vil guote naht hân.

with her very good night have.

ich enruoche, trûge in sîn wân.

I care-not, should-deceive him his expectation.

der wirt gienc ezzen.

the host went to-eat.

und als er was gesezzen,

and when he was seated,

zwêne kapelâne sande er dan
two chaplains sent he thence

6360

und drîe sîne dienstman
and three his vassals

nâch der frouwen dâ sî phlac
for the lady where she tended

ir man da er ûf der bâre lac,
her man where he upon the bier lay,

daz sî ze tische gienge.
that she to table should-go.

doch wæne inz iht vervienge:
yet think them-it at-all would-avail:

6365

wan sî sî niht ane sach,
for she them not at looked,

dô der ein zuo ir sprach.
when the one to her spoke.

daz tâten sî dem wirte kunt.
that made they to-the host known.

nû sande er nâch ir anderstunt
now sent he for her a-second-time

der herren michel mêre.
of-the lords much more.

6370

daz tet er durch ir êre,
that did he for her honor,

daz sî diu gerner kæme
that she the more-gladly should-come

swenne sî vernæme
when she should-bear

daz tischgeriht mære.
the table-ceremony splendid.

- 6375 von ir herzen swære
from her heart's grief
 nam sî der boten deheine war.
took she of-the messengers no heed.
 der wirt sprach 'ich muoz selbe dar.'
the host said 'I must myself thither.'
 alsô er dô zuo ir kam,
when he then to her came,
 bî der hant er sî nam
by the hand he her took
- 6380 und hiez sî mit im ezzen gân.
and bade her with him to-eat go.
 des bat diu frouwe sich erlân.
of-that asked the lady herself spare.
 sî sprach 'ob ich nû æze
she said 'if I now should-eat
 und sô schiere vergæze
and so soon should-forget
 des aller liebesten man
the of-all dearest man
- 6385 den ie wîp mê gewan,
whom ever woman more got,
 daz wære ein unwîplich maz:
that were an unwomanly meal:
 owê wie zæme mir daz?'
alas how would-befit me that?'
 er sprach 'waz ist daz ir saget?
he said 'what is that you say?'
 ân nôt ir iuch sô sêre klaget.
without need you yourself so sorely lament.
- 6390 ir habt verlorn einen man
you have lost a man
 den ich iu, ob mirs got gan,
whom I to-you, if to-me-of-it God grants,

vil wol ersetze:

very well replace:

vil gerne ich iuchs ergetze

very gladly I you-of-it compensate

mit lîbe und mit guote,

with person and with goods,

des wære mir ze muote,

that were to-me in mind,

6395

wan daz ir mich dâ von nement

but that you me there from take

mit bærden die iu missezement,

with gestures which you ill-befit,

daz iuch disen langen tac

that you this long day

nieman getræsten mac.

no-one comfort can.

ez ist ein unbiderber strît,

it is an unworthy contest,

6400

dâ ir doch ane sô stæte sît.

where you yet in so steadfast are.

iuwer schade ist niht sô grôz:

your harm is not so great:

ich bin vil wol sîn übergênôz

I am very well his superior

ode doch wol als frum als er.

or yet well as worthy as he.

frouwe mîn, nû tuot her.

lady my, now do hither.

6405

ich wil geben in iuwer hant

I will give into your hand

mich unde mîn lant

me and my land

und sô kreftigez guot

and so mighty wealth

daz ir iuwer armuot

that you your poverty

6410 unde leides mügt vergezzen.

and of-sorrow may forget.

noch gêt dan mit mir ezzen.'

yet go thence with me to-eat.'

sî sprach 'daz sol got niht enwellen,

she said 'that shall God not will,

sît daz ich mînen gesellen

since that I my comrade

alsô muoz hân verlorn'

so must have lost'

6415 (des wart vil tiure dô gesworn):

(of-that was very dearly then sworn):

'ê erwele ich deich der erde

'sooner choose I that-I to-the earth

mit im bevolhen werde.

with him commended be.

ich habe immer manne rât

I do ever of-man without

sît mir in got benomen hât.'

since from-me him God taken has.'

er sprach 'nû lât die rede sîn

he said 'now let the speech be

6420

immer durch die liebe mîn

ever for the love my

und gêt dan ezzen mit mir:

and go thence to-eat with me:

wan ichs benamen niht enbir.'

for I-of-it assuredly not forgo.'

swie vil er doch sî gebat,

however much he yet her asked,

son wolt sî niht von der stat,

so would she not from the spot,

6425

unz er sî alsô betwanc,

until he her so compelled,

er zôch sî hin sunder danc:

he drew her away against will:

wan sî mohte ihm niht gestrîten.

for she could him not resist.

er satzte sî niht besîten:

he set her not beside:

ir wart ein valtstuol vor gesat

for-her was a folding-stool before set

6430

ze tische engegen, als er bat,

at table opposite, as he asked,

daz er die frouwen

that he the lady

diu baz möhte schouwen.

the better might behold.

er bat sî dicke ezzen.

he bade her often eat.

nun mohts ab niht vergezzen

now could-she however not forget

6435

ir lieben gesellen.

her dear comrade.

trähne begundes vellen;

tears began-she to-let-fall;

der tisch wart von ir ougen naz

the table became from her eyes wet

al des endes dâ sî saz:

all at-the end where she sat:

6440 von jâmer want si ir hende;

from misery wrung she her hands;

diu vil ellende,

the very forlorn-one,

ir klage was harte stæte.

her lament was very constant.

swie vil der wirt gebæte

however much the host asked

daz sî sichs wolde mâzen,

that she herself-of-it would moderate,

6445 nun moht sis niht gelâzen.

now could she-of-it not leave-off.

nû sprach er aber zuo ir

now spoke he again to her

‘frouwe, ir machet iu unt mir

‘lady, you make to-you and to-me

den jâmer al ze vesten

the misery all too firm

und mînen lieben gesten

and to-my dear guests

6450 die her durch freude komen sint.

who hither for joy come are.

und wæret ir niht ein kint,

and were you not a child,

ir möhtent iuwer klage lân,

you might your lament leave,

und kundet ir iuch rehte enstân,

and could you yourself rightly understand,

wie rehte schône in kurzer frist

how right fairly in short time

iuwer dinc gehæhet ist,

your affair raised is,

6455

doch iuch lützel noch bedrôz.

then you little yet wearied.

ichn sach nie wunder sô grôz

I saw never wonder so great

daz ir niht kunnet gedagen

that you not can be-silent

und niht muget wol vertragen

and not may well bear

daz iuwer dinc nû vil wol stât

that your affair now very well stands

6460

unde sich verkêret hât

and itself turned has

ze guoter handelunge.

to good treatment.

swem alsô gelunge

to-whomever so should-succeed

als iu hie muoz gelingen,

as to-you here must succeed,

er möhte baz singen

he might better sing

6465

danne weinen unde klagen.

than weep and lament.

ich muoz iu die rihte sagen,

I must to-you the truth say,

iwer jâmr ist al ze vester.

your misery is all too firm.

hiute wider gester

today against yesterday

sô stêt doch iwer dinc ungelîch.

so stands yet your affair unlike.

6470

ê wârt ir arm, nû sît ir rîch:

before were you poor, now are you rich:

ê enwârt ir niemen wert,

before were you to-no-one worth,

nû hât iuch got êren gwert:

now has you God with-honors granted:

ê wârt ir vil unerkant,

before were you very unknown,

6475 nû sît ir gwaltic über ein lant:

now are you powerful over a land:

ê in swacher schouwe,

before in poor aspect,

nû ein rîchiu frouwe:

now a rich lady:

ê muost ir ûz der ahte sîn,

before must you out-of the esteem be,

nû ein mehtic grævîn:

now a mighty countess:

6480 ê fuorent ir wîselôs,

before fared you guideless,

unz iuwer sælde mich erkôs:

until your fortune me chose:

ê wârt ir aller gnâden bar,

before were you of-all favors bare,

nû habt ir die êre gar:

now have you the honor wholly:

ê litent ir michel arbeit,

before suffered you great hardship,

6485 dâ von hât iuch got geleit:

there from has you God led:

ê hetet ir ein swachez leben,

before had you a poor life,

nû hât iu got wunsch gegeben:

now has to-you God the-ideal given:

ê muoste iu vil gewerren,
before must to-you much trouble,

nû lobet unsern herren
now praise our Lord

daz er iuchs hât übertragen
that he you-of-it has spared

6490

und lât iuwer tumbez klagen:
and leave your foolish lamenting:

ê lebtet ir ân êre,
before lived you without honor,

der habent ir nû mêre
of-that have you now more

dan dehein iuwer lantwîp.
than any your countrywoman.

ir kestigent den lîp,
you chastise the body,

6495

welt ir wizzen, ân nôt.
(if)-will you know, without need.

iu ist ein arm man tût:
to-you is a poor man dead:

des sît ir ergazt mit mir.
of-that are you compensated with me.

den selben wehsel möhtent ir
the same exchange might you

immer gerne trîben.
ever gladly drive.

6500

ich riete ez allen wîben:
I would-counsel it to-all women:

wande ez möhte in niht gewerren
for it could them not harm

daz sî einen rîchen herren
that they a rich lord

næmen für ein solhen man.
should-take for a such man.

6505 iwer tumpheit ich iu verban.

your folly I to-you forbid.

nû ezzent durch den willen mîn.'

now eat for the will my.'

The Blow, and the Dead Man Wakes

VII

Enite swears she will eat nothing until her dead husband eats first. The count strikes her and draws blood and silences the lords' rebukes. Enite welcomes the blows, hoping he will kill her, and cries out louder. Erec, lying in a swoon, wakes at her voice, leaps from the bier, seizes a sword from the wall, and strikes down the count. The wedding guests, priests and bishops among them, flee in panic from the man they took for dead.

dô sprach diu edele künegîn

then spoke the noble queen

'herre, ir habt mir gnuoc gesaget:

'lord, you have to-me enough said:

daz wære doch als guot verdaget.

that were yet as good kept-silent.

6510 vil kurze ich iu antwurten wil.

very briefly I you answer will.

ir mugt wol rede verliesen vil.

you may well speech lose much.

bî dem eide geloubet daz,

by the oath believe that,

in mînen munt kumt nimmer maz,

into my mouth comes never food,

mîn tôter man enezze ê.'

my dead man unless-eat first.'

nûne mohte der grâve mê
now-not could the count more

6515

im selben meister gesîn:
of-him self master be:

er tete sîn untugent schîn;
he made his vice evident;

sîn zorn in verleite
his anger him misled

ze grôzer tôrheite,
to great folly,

* * *

6520

(lacuna)

daz er sî mit der hant sluoc
that he her with the hand struck

alsô daz diu guote
so that the good-one

vil sêre bluote.
very sorely bled.

er sprach 'ir ezzent, übel hût!
he said 'you eat, evil hide!'

beide stille und über lût
both quietly and over loud

6525

sô dûhtez se alle glîche,
so seemed-it to-them all alike,

arme unde rîche,
poor and rich,

ein michel ungefuoge.
a great outrage.

ouch wizzenz im genuoge
also blamed-it him many

under sîniu ougen:
under his eyes:

6530

die andern rettenz tougen,
the others spoke-it secretly,

ez wære tœrlîch getân

it were foolishly done

und er möhteze gerne lâzen hân.

and he might-it gladly left have.

er wart dar umbe gestrâfet vil:

he was there for rebuked much:

6535 sî wizzen imz unz ûf daz zil
they blamed him-it until up-to the point

daz der schalkhafte man

that the knavish man

vil sêre zürnen began.

very sorely to-rage began.

ir strâfen was im ungemach.

their rebuking was to-him troublesome.

vil unsenfteclîche er sprach

very ungently he spoke

6540 'ir herren, ir sît wunderlich,
'you lords, you are strange,

daz ir dar umbe strâfet mich

that you there for rebuke me

swaz ich mînem wîbe tuo.

whatever I to-my woman do.

dâ bestêt doch niemen zuo

there pertains yet no-one to

ze redenne übel noch guot,

to speak ill nor good,

6545 swaz ein man sîm wîbe tuot.
whatever a man to-his woman does.

sî ist mîn und bin ich ir:

she is mine and am I hers:

wie welt ir daz erwern mir,

how will you that prevent to-me,

ichn tuo ir swaz mir gevalle?’

I do to-her whatever me pleases?’

dâ mite gesweigete er sî alle.

there with silenced he them all.

dô diu frouwe wart geslagen,

when the lady was struck,

6550

ir bærde suln wir niht verdagen.

her bearing shall we not keep-silent.

von dem slage wart sî frô

from the blow became she glad

und ouch des tages nie mê wan dô.

and also on-that day never more but then.

wâ sî die freude möhte nemen?

where she the joy might take?

daz mugt ir gerne vernemen;

that may you gladly hear;

6555

wan slege tuont selten iemen frô.

for blows make seldom anyone glad.

ir freude schuof sich sô:

her joy shaped itself so:

sî wære gerner tût gewesen

she would-have more-gladly dead been

tûsent stunt danne genesen:

thousand times than survived:

und als sî den slac enphie

and when she the blow received

6560

(wan er von mannes krefte gie),

(for it from man's strength went),

dô hetes gedingen unde trôst

then had-she hope and trust

sî wurde des lîbes belôst,

she should-be of-the life bereft,

und swaz sî mêre gespræche

and whatever she more should-speak

6565 daz erz mit slegen ræche

that be-it with blows should-avenge

unz er sî gar erslüege.

until he her wholly should-slay.

des wart vil ungefüege

therefore became very immoderate

ir klage, und schrê wider dem site,

her lament, and cried against the custom,

und wânde den tôt gedienen mite.

and thought the death earn with-it.

6570 sî stuont von im unverre

she stood from him not-far

und sprach 'geloubet, herre,

and said 'believe, lord,

ich ahte ûf iuwer slege niht.

I heed upon your blows not.

swaz mir von iu geschiht,

whatever to-me from you happens,

unde nemt ir mir den lîp,

and (if)-take you from-me the life,

6575 ich werde nimmer iuwer wîp.

I become never your woman.

des nement iu ein zil'

of-that take for-yourself an end.'

der rede treip sî sô vil

of-the speech drove she so much

unz er sî anderstunt

until he her a-second-time

sêre sluoc an den munt.

sorely struck on the mouth.

6580 sînen slac sî niht flôch:

his blow she not fled:

vil sêre sî sich drunder zôch,
very sorely she herself thereunder drew,

daz si ir mêre enphienge.
that she of-them more should-receive.

sî wânde ir wille ergienge.
she thought her will should-come-about.

sî sprach 'wê mir vil armen wîbe!
she said 'woe to-me very poor woman!

wær mîn geselle bî lîbe,
were my comrade in life,

ditz bliuwen wær vil unvertragen.'
this beating were very unendured.'

dô sî sô lûte begunde klagen,
when she so loud began to-lament,

Êrec fil de roi Lac,
Erec son of king Lac,

* * *
(lacuna)

in des tôdes wâne,
in the death's seeming,

und doch des tôdes âne.
and yet of-the death without.

geruowet was er etewaz,
rested was he somewhat,

unde doch niht vil baz.
and yet not much better.

er lac in einem twalme
he lay in a swoon

und erschrihte von ir galme
and started from her cry

als der dâ wirt erwecket,
as he who becomes awakened,

von swærem troume erschrecket.
from heavy dream frightened.

6585

6590

6595

er fuor ûf von der bâren

he started up from the bier

in fremden gebâren

in strange bearing

6600 und gunde mit den ougen sehen.

and began with the eyes to-see.

in wundert waz im wære geschehen

him wondered what to-him were happened

und weste niht wier dar kam.

and knew not how-be thither came.

anderstunt er sî vernam:

a-second-time he her heard:

wan sî vil dicke schrê

for she very often cried

6605 'owê, lieber herre, owê!

'alas, dear lord, alas!

dîner helfe ger ich ân nôt,

thy help desire I without need,

wan dû bist et aber leider tô't.

for thou art just however alas dead.'

als sî in dô nande,

when she him then named,

ze hant er sî erkande

at once he her recognized

6610 und vernam wol daz sî wære

and perceived well that she were

in etelîcher swære:

in some grief:

ern weste wie oder wâ.

he-not knew how or where.

er enlac niht langer dâ.

he lay not longer there.

als er erkande ir stimme,

when he recognized her voice,

ûf spranc er mit grimme

up sprang he with grimness

6615

und rûschte vaste under sî.

and rushed fast among them.

nû hiengen dâ nâhen bî

now hung there near by

swerte vil an einer want:

swords many on a wall:

der kam im einz in die hant.

of-them came to-him one into the hand.

er hete zornes genuoc.

he had of-anger enough.

6620

des êrsten rûsches er sluoc

at-the first rush he struck

den wirt selbedritten

the host himself-the-third

(under den saz er enmitten):

(among them sat he in-the-midst):

die andern gâben die fluht.

the others gave the flight.

dâ warte niemen keiner zuht:

there regarded no-one any courtesy:

6625

man sach dâ niemen hôher stân

one saw there no-one back stand

‘herre, welt ir für gân,’

‘lord, will you ahead go,’

wan swem der wec wart,

but to-whomever the way became,

der huop sich an die vart

he betook himself on the way

(ez was in sô geschaffen),

(it was to-them so ordered),

6630

die leien für die phaffen:

the laymen before the priests:

swie hôhe er wære beschorn,

however high he were tonsured,

er wart dô lützel ûz erkorn,

he was then little out chosen,

ez wære abt od bischof:

(whether)-it were abbot or bishop:

6635 hie flôch der povel, dort der hof:

here fled the rabble, there the court:

ze den türn wart vil enge

at the doors became very narrow

von grôzem gedreng:

from great throng:

der kneht für sînen herren dranc:

the servant before his lord pushed:

der wec dûhte sî vil lanc

the way seemed to-them very long

6640 der zuo den türn ûz gie:

whith to the doors out went:

ine kom ze solher brûtlouft nie:

I came to such wedding never:

ein schrit was in ein raste:

a step was to-them a league:

sî begunden vaste

they began fast

fliehen unde wenken:

to-flee and to-swerve:

6645 ez lâgen undern benken

there lay under-the benches

vil guoter knehte

many good warriors

wider ritterrehte.

against knight-right.

eines dinges vil geschiht,

of-one thing much happens,

des enwundert mich niht,

of-that wonders me not,

swer sînem lîbe vorhte treit,

whoever for-his life fear bears,

6650

daz er durch sîne gewarheit

that he for his safety

dicke fliuhet grôzen schal

often flees great din

ûf die burc ûz dem tal.

up-to the castle out-of the valley.

als sluffen dise ûz dem hûs

so slipped these out-of the house

und fluhen ze loche sam diu mûs.

and fled to hole as the mice.

6655

in wart daz wîte bûrgetor

to-them became the wide castle-gate

beidiu dar inne und ouch dâ vor

both there within and also there before

ze wênic und ze enge,

too little and too narrow,

sô daz sî mit gedrenge

so that they with thronging

vielen über mûre

fell over walls

6660

gelîch einem schûre:

like a hailstorm:

wan sî diu grimme vorhte treip.

for them the grim fear drove.

Limors liutlôs beleip.

Limors peopleless remained.

fliehens gieng in michel nôt:

of-fleeing went to-them great need:

wan sî vorhten den tût.

for they feared the death.

6665

ir fluht was âne schande.

their flight was without disgrace.

swerz in ze laster wande,

whoever-it to-them to reproach turned,

der überspræche sich dar an.

he would-misspeak himself there in.

nû sprechet, swâ ein tôter man,

now say, wherever a dead man,

6670 mit bluotigen wunden,

with bloody wounds,

gerêwet, in gewunden,

shrouded, in wound,

houbet unde hende

head and hands

füeze an eime gebende,

feet in a binding,

mit einem swerte alsô bar

with a sword so bare

6675 ûf ein ungewarnte schar

upon an unwarned company

in aller gæhe liefē

in all haste should-run

und wâfen über sî riefē,

and to-arms over them should-cry,

er flühe swem et wære

he would-flee to-whomever just were

der lîp ze ihte mære:

the life to aught dear:

6680 und wære ich gewesen bî,

and were I been by,

ich hete geflohn, swie küene ich sî.

I would-have fled, however bold I be.

sîn torste dâ niemen bîten,

for-him dared there no-one wait,

ân die frouwen Ênîten.

except the lady Enite.

den tôten sî vil gerne sach:

the dead-one she very gladly saw:

ze liebe wart ir ungemach

to joy became her discomfort

6685

allez verkêret

all turned

und freude gemêret.

and joy increased.

bî der hant er sî vienc:

by the hand he her caught:

vil gnôte er suochende gienc,

very eagerly he searching went,

unz daz er sîn îsengwant

until that he his armor

6690

joch schilt unde sper vant,

and shield and spear found,

und wâfente sich als ê,

and armed himself as before,

sam im nie wurde wê.

as-if to-him never became woe.

sîner rosse vant er niht:

of-his horses found he none:

owê dirre geschiht!

alas for-this happening!

6695

suln wir nû ze fuoze gân?

shall we now on foot go?

daz haben wir selten ê getân.

that have we seldom before done.

nû müeze got gesenden

now may God send

disen ellenden,

to-these exiled-ones,

6700 Êrecke und Enîten,
to-Erec and Enite,
 ros dâ sî ûf rîten.
horses which they upon ride.

The Escape from Limors, and the Reconciliation

VIII

At the castle gate Erec meets his own horse, which a page has ridden to water, and takes it back. With Enite before him and guiding him, he rides into the forest between three realms. There she tells him how he came to Limors, and he ends the hard test he has set her, sure now that she is true. He asks her forgiveness, which she gives at once. Meanwhile a page brings the news to King Guivreiz, who cries out loudly for arms.

als er der rosse niene vant,
when he of-the horses not-at-all found,
 nû tet er alsz im was gewant.
now did he as-it for-him was disposed.

sînen schilt nam er
his shield took he

6705 und in die winstern hant daz sper,
and in the left hand the spear,

an sîner zeswen sîten
on his right side

fuorter frowen Ênîten,
led-he lady Enite,

und gâhte für daz bûrgetor.
and hastened before the castle-gate.

dâ wart ime vor
there was to-him before

6710 sîn ros engegen brâht,
his horse toward brought,

des im doch ninder was gedâht,
of-which to-him yet nowhere was thought,

noch jeneme der ez reit,
nor to-that-one who it rode,

als doch sîn sælekeit
as yet his blessedness

volleclîche dar an schein.
fully there in appeared.

ez het des wirtes garzûn ein
it had the host's page one

6715

gefüeret ze wazzer.
led to water.

dar ûf sazzet.
there upon sat-be.

sîn rotewange er sanc,
his rotouenge he sang,

vil ebene stuont sîn gedanc:
very evenly stood his thought:

wande er enweste niht
for he knew nothing

6720

umbe dise aneschiht.
about this mishap.

nû reit er ûf den burcwec.
now rode he upon the castle-road.

daz ros erkante Êrec
the horse recognized Erec

dô erz aller verrest sach.
when he-it of-all farthest saw.

vil liebe im dar an geschach.
much joy to-him there in happened.

6725

ez fuogte et gotes wille.
it arranged just God's will.

nû stuont er vil stille

now stood he very still

unz im daz ros sô nâhen kam

until to-him the horse so near came

daz erz bî dem britel nam

that he-it by the bridle took

6730 wider in sîne phlege,

back into his keeping,

unde huop sich after wege.

and betook himself along (the)-way.

für sich sazt er die künegîn

before himself set he the queen

(ez mohte dô niht baz gesîn),

(it could then not better be),

die frouwen Ênîten,

the lady Enite,

6735 und gedâhte rîten

and thought to-ride

allez für sich durch daz lant.

all before himself through the land.

nû was im der wec unerkannt:

now was to-him the way unknown:

ouch irte daz sîne vart

also hindered that his journey

daz diu naht vinster wart:

that the night dark became:

6740 ouch vorhte er in dem lande

also feared he in the land

schaden unde schande

harm and disgrace

von dem lantvolke gewinnen,

from the country-folk to-get,

swenne sî wurden innen

when they became aware

waz er getân hâte.

what he done had.

nâch frowen Enîten râte

after lady Enite's counsel

6745

(wan si in den wec lêrte)

(for she him the way taught)

ûf die strâze er kêrte

onto the road he turned

die er gerêwet dar reit:

which he shrouded thither rode:

daz geschach durch gewarheit.

that happened for safety.

ez wâren disiu driu lant

there were these three lands

6750

an ein ander gewant

to one another joined

unde nâhen genuoc,

and near enough,

daz dâ er den grâven sluoc,

that-one where he the count slew,

und abe des wênigen man

and also of-the little man

von dem er die wunden gwan,

from whom he the wounds got,

6755

und des künec Artûses gwalt.

and the king Arthur's dominion.

disiu driu schiet niuwan der walt

these three divided only the forest

da er enmitten inne reit

where he in-the-midst within rode

nâch dirre arbeit.

after this hardship.

6760 und als sî kômen in den walt
and when they came into the forest

ûz der Sorgen gewalt
out-of the Care's power

wider ûf ir kunden wec,
back upon their known way,

nû frâgte der künec Êrec
now asked the king Erec

frowen Ênîten mære
lady Enite tidings

6765 wie er komen wære
how he come were

in des grâven gewalt
into the count's power

den ich iu geslagen hân gezalt.
whom I to-you slain have told.

nû tete si im die sache,
now made she to-him the affair,

ir ougen zungemache,
her eyes' to-discomfort,

6770 allez weinende kunt.
all weeping known.

dô endet sich ze stunt
then ended itself at once

diu swære spæhe
the heavy scrutiny

und diu fremde wæhe
and the strange artifice

der er unz an den tac
which he until to the day

6775 mit ir âne sache pfîac,
with her without cause practiced,

daz er sî mit gruoze meit

that he her with greeting avoided

sît er mit ir von hûse reit.

since he with her from house rode.

durch daz diu spæhe wart genomen,

for what the scrutiny was taken,

des ist er an ein ende komen

of-that is he at an end come

und westez rehte âne wân.

and knew-it rightly without doubt.

ez was durch versuochen getân

it was for testing done

ob si im wære ein rehtez wîp.

whether she to-him were a true woman.

nû hâte er ir lîp

now had he her person

ersichert gänzlichen wol,

assayed wholly well,

als man daz golt sol

as one the gold shall

liutern in der esse,

refine in the forge,

daz er nû rehte wesse

that he now rightly knew

daz er an ir hâte

that he in her had

triuwe unde stæte

faithfulness and constancy

unde daz sî wære

and that she were

ein wîp unwandelbære.

a woman unchangeable.

er druhtes an sîn brüste,

he pressed-her to his breast,

6780

6785

6790

vil dicke er sî küste

very often he her kissed

vol minneclîchen,

full lovingly,

6795 und bat die tugentrîchen

and asked the virtue-rich-one

daz sî wolde vergeben

that she would forgive

als ungeselleclîchez leben

so uncompanionable life

unde manege arbeit

and many-a hardship

die sî ûf der vâre leit.

whiche she on the journey suffered.

6800 bezzerunge er ir gehiez,

amendment he to-her promised,

die er benamen wâr liez.

whiche he assuredly true let.

nû vergap si imz an der stat,

now forgave she him-it on the spot,

wand er sis friuntlîchen bat.

for he her-of-it friendly asked.

sî sprach 'lieber herre,

she said 'dear lord,

6805 jan muote mich sô verre

indeed grieved me so far

dehein ander ungemach,

no other discomfort,

der vil âne zal geschach,

of-which much without number happened,

ez huop mich allez ringe

it weighed me all lightly

wider dem dinge

against the thing

daz ich iuch muoste mîden:

that I you must shun:

solt ich daz langer lîden,

should I that longer suffer,

dar umbe müeste ich mîn leben

there for must I my life

als schiere hân gegeben.'

as soon have given.'

dô ditz wunder ergie

when this wonder took-place

ûf Limors, nû seht hie

at Limors, now see here

wâ ein garzûn entran.

where a page escaped.

der lief durch den walt dan,

he ran through the forest thence,

dar umbe daz erz zuo der stunt

there for that he-it at the hour

dem wênen kûnege tæte kunt

to-the little king should-make known

der dâ was sô unverzagt.

who there was so undaunted.

ich habe iu ê von im gesagt:

I have to-you before of him told:

er was Guivreiz genant,

he was Guivreiz named,

der selbe der mit sîner hant

the same who with his hand

Êrecke sîne wunden bant.

for-Erec his wounds bound.

6810

6815

6820

- 6825 dem garzûn was der wec bekant.
to-the page was the way known.
- er gunde sêre gâhen.
he began sorely to-hasten.
- ouch was ez im vil nâhen:
also was it to-him very near:
- ir zweier gewalt
of-them two dominion
- enschieť niuwan der walt.
divided only the forest.
- 6830 er bôzete an daz bûrgetor.
he knocked at the castle-gate.
- dâ twelte er unlange vor,
there tarried he not-long before,
- er wart vil drâte in gelân.
he was very quickly in let.
- nû gienc er fûr den kûnec stân
now went he before the king to-stand
- und begunde ime sagen
and began to-him to-tell
- 6835 wie der grâve Oringles wære erslagen,
how the count Oringles were slain,
- und daz hete ein tôter man getân.
and that had a dead man done.
- nu begunde sich Guivreiz verstân
now began himself Guivreiz to-understand
- ze jungest an dem mære
at last from the tidings
- daz ez Êrec wære.
that it Erec were.
- 6840 nochdan was er niht entslâfen.
still was he not asleep.
- vil lûte schrei er 'wâfen!
very loud cried he 'to-arms!

welch ein schade muoz ergân,
what a harm must come-about,

und sol den lîp verloren hân
and shall the life lost have

der beste ritter der darf leben!
the best knight who may live!

im enwelle got genâde geben,
to-him unless-will God grace give,

6845

wirt ez dem lantvolke kunt,
(if)-becomes it to-the country-folk known,

sî ermurdent in ze stunt.
they murder him at once.

owê, möht ich im vor gesîn,
alas, might I him before be,

daz wurde mînem friunde schîn.
that would-become to-my friend evident.

doch wirt ez versuochet,
yet becomes it tried,

6850

ob es got ruochet.
if of-it God deigns.'

Guivreiz Rides by Night

IX

Guivreiz rides out with thirty knights to help Erec out of the land. Erec hears the company's bells by moonlight, has Enite dismount by the road, and waits. Guivreiz jousts with him, thrusts him from his horse, and is about to kill him when Enite springs from the thicket, throws herself over her husband, and names King Guivreiz as the one who wounded him. The two men embrace, and Erec takes the joust as just penance for his presumption.

nû wâfent er sich drâte

now armed he himself quickly

und swaz er ritter hâte.

and whatever he of-knights had.

nû wart ir wol in der zal

now became of-them fully in the count

6855 drîzic ritter über al.

thirty knights over all.

diu ros brâhte man in dô.

the horses brought one to-them then.

zwîvelhaft und unfrô

doubtful and unglad

sô kêrte der künec balde

so turned the king quickly

gegen dem walde

toward the forest

6860 daz er dem ellenden man

that he the exiled man

ûz dem lande hulfe dan.

out-of the land should-help thence.

nu geriten sî bêde einen wec,
now rode they both one way,

an dirre sîten Êrec
on this side Erec

unde jenenthalp er,
and on-that-side he,

der eine hin, der ander her,
the one away, the other hither,

6865

daz sî niht mohten bewarn
that they not could prevent

sin müestn ein ander widervarn:
they must one another encounter:

alsô fuogte ez diu geschiht.
so arranged it the chance.

nû weste ir deweder niht
now knew of-them either not

umbe des andern reise:
about the other's journey:

6870

des kom Êrec in freise.
therefore came Erec into peril.

dô sî noch wâren verre,
when they still were far,

der ellende herre
the exiled lord

wart vil wol gewar
became very well aware

der gewâfenten schar:
of-the armed company:

6875

wan der schal und der dôz
for the din and the noise

was von den schellen grôz.
was from the bells great.

er sprach ze der frowen Ênîten

he said to the lady Enite

‘frouwe, ich høere rîten

‘lady, I hear ride

6880 engegen uns ein michel her.

toward us a great host.

nûne wil ich âne wer

now will I without defense

alsô zagelîchen

so cowardly

ûz dem wege niht entwîchen.

out-of the way not withdraw.

vil ringe ist mîn kraft:

very slight is my strength:

6885 doch gibe ich in ritterschaft

yet give I them knighthood

ze eteslîcher mâze.

in some measure.

nu erbeizent zuo der strâze

now dismount by the road

unz ir geseht wiez ergê.’

until you see how-it turns-out.’

ich wæne der frouwen ê

I think to-the lady before

6890 lützel leider geschach:

little more-grievous happened:

wande sî sîn unkraft sach.

for she his weakness saw.

in den wec hielt er.

in the way halted he.

enmitten riten sî dort her.

meanwhile rode they yonder hither.

der mâne bôt in schœne naht
the moon offered them fair night

der dô was unbedaht.
which then was uncovered.

6895

nû wart sîn der künec gewar,
now became of-him the king aware,

wan er was der vorderst an der schar.
for he was the foremost in the company.

er sach in halten in den wec.
he saw him halt in the way.

nû bereit sich Êrec
now readied himself Erec

ie mitten ze wer.
even meanwhile to defense.

6900

nû sî got der in ner.
now be God who him saves.

nû waz welt ir daz der künec tuo?
now what will you that the king do?

wan er bereit sich ouch dar zuo,
but he readied himself also there to,

als er justieren solde,
as he joust should,

ob er niht verzagen wolde,
if he not despair would,

6905

des ich iu vil sicher sage:
which I to-you very surely say:

er enwas doch niht ein zage.
he was yet not a coward.

daz bescheinde er wol dâ
that showed he well there

und ouch vor dicke anderswâ.
and also before often elsewhere.

- 6910 diu sper begundens neigen
the spears began-they to-lower
- unde ir kraft erzeigen:
and their strength to-show:
- zesamene liezen sî gân:
together let they go:
- dô wart ein rîchiu just getân.
then was a mighty joust done.
- die vil guoten knehte,
the very good warriors,
- 6915 nû trâfen sî vil rehte
now hit they very rightly
- beide nâch ir gemerke.
both according-to their aim.
- nû half niuwan sîn sterke
now helped only his strength
- den baz geruoweten man
the better rested man
- daz er den prîs dâ gewan
that he the prize there won
- 6920 und im alsô wol geschach.
and to-him so well happened.
- Êreken er dâ nider stach
Erec he there down thrust
- hinderz ors an daz gras
behind-the horse onto the grass
- als lanc sô der schaft was.
as long as the shaft was.
- über in erbeizter dô:
over him dismounted-he then:
- 6925 des wart diu frouwe Ênîte unfrô.
therefore became the lady Enite unglad.

ditz was Êrecke nie geschehen:

this was to-Erec never happened:

ezn möht ouch nieman gejehen,

it might also no-one declare,

er enwelle in liegen an,

he unless-will him lie against,

daz in ie dehein man

that him ever any man

gestæche zuo der erde:

should-thrust to the earth:

6930

ouch wære es der werde

also would-have-been of-it the worthy-one

vil wol erlân dâ ze stunt,

very well spared there at once,

unde wære er gesunt.

and were he sound.

sus was im entwichen diu kraft,

thus was from-him withdrawn the strength,

daz er muoste meisterschaft

that he must mastery

6935

dulden von des küneges hant.

endure from the king's hand.

den helm er im abe bant

the helm he from-him off unbound

und woldin vol hân erslagen.

and would-him fully have slain.

daz moht diu frouwe niht vertragen.

that could the lady not bear.

dâ sî dort stuont verborgen

where she yonder stood hidden

6940

in grôzen sorgen,

in great cares,

si entwelte deheine wîle,

she tarried no while,

sî spranc ûz dem zîle

she sprang out-of the thicket

und gunde sich vellen

and began herself to-flying

6945 über ir gesellen.

over her comrade.

sî sprach 'nein, ritter guot,

she said 'no, knight good,

gewünne dû ie ritters muot,

(if)-gained thou ever knight's spirit,

niht erslach mir mînen man!

not slay for-me my man!

und gedenke dar an,

and think there on,

6950 er ist wunt sêre,

he is wounded sorely,

dû bist sus gar ân êre,

thou art thus wholly without honor,

swaz dû im nû mêre getuost:

whatever thou to-him now more doest:

wan du es sünde haben muost.

for thou of-it sin have must.

in hât der künec Guivreiz,

him has the king Guivreiz,

6955 ob ich sînen namen weiz,

if I his name know,

verwundet in die sîten.'

wounded in the side.'

Guivreiz die frowen Ênîten

Guivreiz the lady Enite

bî der stimme erkande,

by the voice recognized,

ouch half ez daz sin nande.

also helped it that she-him named.

vil gâhes stuont er hôher dan.

very suddenly stood he back thence.

6960

er sprach 'frouwe, saget an

he said 'lady, tell on

wer dirre ritter sî,

who this knight be,

unde saget mir dâ bî

and tell me there by

wâ von ir mich erkennet:

where from you me know:

ich binz den ir dâ nennet.

I am-it whom you there name.

6965

ich wæn mir übel sî geschehen.

I think to-me ill be happened.

frouwe, ir sult mir verjehen

lady, you shall to-me declare

wie ez umbe iuch sî gewant:

how it about you be disposed:

ist dirre herre Êrec genant

is this lord Erec named

und ir frouwe Ênîte?

and you lady Enite?

6970

daz ich iht ze lange bîte:

lest I at-all too long wait:

wande ich bin durch in ûz komen,

for I am for him out come,

und sage iu wie ich hân vernomen

and tell you how I have heard

von im mir leidiu mære,

of him to-me grievous tidings,

daz er bekumbert wære

that he troubled were

6975

ûf Limors hie nâhen bî.

at Limors here near by.

ich fürhte er nû erslagen sî.

I fear he now slain be.

ich schîne ie mitten ûf der vart,

I appear even meanwhile on the way,

als ez mir gesaget wart,

as it to-me told was,

6980 ich und mîne gesellen,

I and my comrades,

daz wir im helfen wellen:

that we him help will:

ich sûmt mich in dem walde:

I delayed myself in the forest:

ich solt im komen balde:

I should to-him come quickly:

ez ist schade, wirt er erslagen.'

it is harm, (if)-becomes he slain.'

6985 nu begunde sî imz aber sagen

now began she to-him-it again to-tell

unde wortzeichen geben:

and tokens to-give:

des beleip im daz leben.

therefore remained to-him the life.

daz hûetelîn sim abe bant:

the little-cap she-from-him off unbound:

dô wart er im rehte erkant.

then became he to-him rightly known.

6990 vil gerne er in an sach:

very gladly he him at looked:

mit guotem willen er sprach

with good will he said

'sît willekomen, herre,

'be welcome, lord,

und saget ob iu iht werre
and tell if you aught troubles

ode waz wære diu geschiht.
or what were the event.'

Êrec sprach 'mir wirret niht:
Erec said 'me troubles nothing:

6995

ich bin anders wol gesunt,
I am otherwise well sound,

wan dâ ich von iu wart wunt.
but where I from you became wounded.'

des wart Guivreiz vil frô.
of-that became Guivreiz very glad.

sîn haupt entwâfent er dô.
his head unarmed he then.

von freuden dise zwêne man
for joy these two men

7000

liefen ein ander an
ran one another at

und kusten sich mit triuwen.
and kissed each-other with faithfulness.

Guivreiz stuont mit riuwen
Guivreiz stood with rue

umb Êreckes ungemach,
about Erec's discomfort,

der im von sîner just geschach.
which to-him from his joust happened.

7005

als er daz begunde klagen,
when he that began to-lament,

Êrec sprach 'des sult ir dagen
Erec said 'of-that shall you be-silent

und ûz iuwer ahte lân.
and out-of your heed let.

ir habt an mir niht missetân.
you have toward me not done-wrong.

- 7010 swelch man tœrlîche tuot,
whatever man foolishly does,
 wirt es im gelônnet, daz ist guot.
(if)-becomes of-it to-him repaid, that is good.
 sît daz ich tumber man
since that I foolish man
 ie von tumpheit muot gewan
ever from folly purpose got
 sô grôzer unmâze
of-so great excess
- 7015 daz ich fremder strâze
that I of-strange road
 eine wolde walten
alone would command
 unde vor behalten
and back keep
 sô manegem guoten knechte,
from-so many-a good warrior,
 dô tâtent ir mir rehte.
then did you to-me rightly.
- 7020 mîn buoze wart ze kleine,
my penance became too small,
 dô ich alters eine
when I all alone
 iwer aller êre wolde hân:
of-you all honor would have:
 ich solde baz ze buoze stân.
I should better to penance stand.'
 dô man der rede gar gesweic,
when one of-the speech wholly fell-silent,
- 7025 Guivreiz der frowen Ênîten neic
Guivreiz to-the lady Enite bowed
 und hiez sî willekomen sîn.
and bade her welcome be.

des gnâdet im diu künegîn.

for-that thanked him the queen.

und sî wurden wol gewar

and they became well aware

daz im niht tœtliches war,

that to-him nothing deadly ailed,

des wâren sî gemeine frô.

of-that were they together glad.

7030

The Night under the Beeches, and Penefrec

X

Guivreiz leads them to a meadow, where they spend the night by a fire under three beeches, Erec and Enite lying together again. Next day he brings them to his castle Penefrec, which stands in a lake ringed by a walled game park. There his two sisters heal Erec's wounds within fourteen nights with Famurgan's salve, a gift from Guinevere. The comforts weigh on Erec, though, and he longs to ride again.

ûf sâzen sî dô,

up sat they then,

und riten doch unverre.

and rode yet not-far.

Guivreiz der herre

Guivreiz the lord

fuorte sî ûz dem wege

led them out-of the way

in gâmelîcher phlege,

in merry care,

an ein wiseflecken.

to a meadow-patch.

7035

durch den hern Êreken

for the lord Erec

beliben sî dâ die naht

stayed they there the night

ze ruo nâch sîner unmaht.

for rest after his weakness.

7040 sî wurden dâ berâten,

they were there provided,

als sî des state hâten,

as they of-it opportunity had,

mit vil guotem fiure.

with very good fire.

dazn was dâ bortiure:

that-not was there scarce:

dâ was waldes genuoc,

there was of-wood enough,

7045 der in niuwan an daz fiur truoc.

who for-them only to the fire bore.

dô sî dâ bî gesâzen

when they there by sat

und ein teil vergâzen

and a part forgot

kumberlîcher arbeit

of-grievous hardship

und Êrec hâte gereit

and Erec had told

7050 waz kumbers er hâte erliten

what of-affliction he had suffered

sît daz er was von im geriten,

since that he was from him ridden,

dô sî bêde ze einer stunt

when they both at one time

von ein ander wurden wunt

by one another became wounded

(daz selbe hân ich niht verdaget,

(that same have I not kept-silent,

ich enhabe ius gesaget

I have to-you-of-it told

7055

sô vil als ichs weste),

so much as I-of-it knew),

dise lieben geste

these dear guests

begunden sî vil verre klagen

began they very greatly to-lament

und gote grôze gnâde sagen

and to-God great thanks to-say

daz Êrec dannoch lebte:

that Erec still lived:

7060

wan im vil dicke swebte

for to-him very often hovered

sîn lîp in solher wâge

his life in such hazard

als ûf der meres wâge

as on the sea's wave

ein schefbrûchiger man

a shipwrecked man

ûf einem brete kæme dan

on a board should-come thence

7065

ûz an daz stat gerunnen.

out to the shore run.

ofte heter gewonnen

often had-he got

ein leben zwîvellichez

a life doubtful

und disem wol gelichez:

and to-this well like:

7070 nû het in an der Gnâden sant

now had him onto the Grace's sand

ûz kumbers ünden gesant

out-of affliction's waves sent

got und sîn frûmekeit,

God and his prowess,

daz er nû allez sîn leit

that he now all his sorrow

hâte überwunden,

bad overcome,

7075 daz er ze disen stunden

that he at these hours

wol frœlichen saz.

well gladly sat.

got helfe im nû fürbaz:

God help him now further:

im ist noch gelungen âne strît.

to-him is yet succeeded without dispute.

nû was ouch slâfennes zît.

now was also of-sleeping time.

7080 dô giengen die knehte

then went the servants

spehen sam mit rehte

to-spy as by right

welch stat in dâ töhte

which place to-them there might-serve

dâ man in betten möhte.

where one for-them make-beds might.

als sî dô giengen suochen,
as they then went to-see,

nû sâhen sî drî buochen
now saw they three beeches

einhalb bî dem fiure stân,
on-one-side by the fire stand,

breit unde wol getân,
broad and well formed,

geliche lanc gewahsen,
equally long grown,

mit rîchen loupvahsen,
with rich leaf-growth,

mit wol zerbreiten esten.
with well spread branches.

den vil lieben gesten
for-the very dear guests

betten sî dar under.
made-beds they there under.

under eine besunder
under one apart

Êrecke und frowen Ênîten,
for-Erec and lady Enite,

die ze manegen zîten
who at many times

bî ein ander niht enlâgen
by one another not lay

noch geselleschaft phlâgen
nor companionship practiced

mit slâfe und mit mazze.
with sleep and with food.

7085

7090

7095

dem unbescheiden hazze

to-the unreasoning hatred

7100 wart ein ende gegeben

was an end given

und kurn in ein bezzer leben.

and chose for-themselves a better life.

dem wirte betten sî

for-the host made-beds they

under die nâhsten dâ bî

under the nearest there by

(diu selbe diu stuont enmitten):

(that same which stood in-the-midst):

7105 den rittern under die dritten.

for-the knights under the third.

‘nû sage, waz was ir bettewât?’

‘now say, what was their bedclothes?’

entriwen, als ez der walt hât,

truly, as it the forest has,

schœnez loup und reinez gras,

fair leaves and clean grass,

so ez in dem walde beste was.

as it in the forest best was.

7110 waz touc daz lange frâgen,

what avails the long asking,

wan daz sî doch lâgen?

but that they yet lay?

diu naht ein süezez ende nam.

the night a sweet end took.

als in dô der tac kam,

when to-them then the day came,

nû riten sî von dan.

now rode they from thence.

7115 der vil wênige man,

the very little man,

Guivreiz ir wirt, fuorte sî
Guivreiz their host, led them

ze bezzerm gmache dâ bî,
to better comfort there by,

ûf eine sîne veste
to a his stronghold

da er sî bewarte beste
where he them guarded best

ze vollem gemache. 7120
with full comfort.

von aller guoten sache
of all good thing

sô was daz selbe hûs vol,
so was the same house full,

rehte als ich iu sagen sol.
right as I to-you tell shall.

ez stuont enmittn in eime sê:
it stood in-the-midst in a lake:

der gap im gnuoc und dannoch mê 7125
which gave him enough and besides more

der aller besten vische
of-the of-all best fish

die ie ze küneges tische
which ever to king's table

dehein man gebrâhte,
any man brought,

swelher man gedâhte.
of-whatever-sort one thought.

dar zuo was dâ daz beste jaget 7130
there to was there the best hunting

dâ von uns ie wart gesaget.
there of to-us ever was told.

ez het der künec umbe den sê
it had the king around the lake

wol zwô mîle oder mê
fully two miles or more

des waldes in gevangen
of-the forest in enclosed

7135 und mit mûre umbegangen:
and with wall surrounded:

dar in gienc dehein tor mê
there in went no gate more

niuwan ûz gegen dem sê.
only out toward the lake.

mit mûre was der selbe kreiz,
with wall was the same circle,

als ich iu ze sagen weiz,
as I to-you to tell know,

7140 glîche endriu gescheiden hin.
equally into-three divided away.

daz dritte teil von den drin
the third part of the three

hâte rôtwildes gnuoc:
had of-red-deer enough:

swarzwilt daz ander teil truoc.
wild-swine the other part bore.

in dem dritten teile dâ bî,
in the third part there by,

7145 frâgt ir waz dar inne sî?
ask you what there in be?

dâ wâren inne besunder
there were within apart

niuwan kleiniu kunder,
only little beasts,

fühse hasen und diu gelîche.
foxes hares and the like.

ez was et vil vollecliche

it was just very fully

erziuget dirre wiltban

furnished this game-preserve

und alsô daz dehein man

and so that no man

der doch gerne wolde jagen

who yet gladly would hunt

nimmer dôrfte geklagen

ever needed lament

daz er niht wildes funde.

that he no game found.

ouch het der wirt die hunde

also had the host the hounds

die des mannes willen tâten.

whiche the man's will did.

mit den ditz jagehûs was berâten.

with which this hunting-lodge was provided.

swenn er dar ûz sach maneges site

whenever he there out saw many-a-one's custom

der dâ rande dâ mite

who there coursed there with

swâ er bî den zinnen saz,

where he by the battlements sat,

sô sâhenz jene niht vil baz

so saw-it those not much better

die dâ mite randen.

who there with coursed.

7150

7155

7160

wer solt im ab daz enblanden
who should to-him however that make-irksome

swenn er möhte mit den frouwen
when he might with the ladies

7165 ab dem hûse schouwen
from the house behold

loufen die hunde?
run the bounds?

wan ze swelher stunde
for at whatever hour

daz rôtwilt ersprenget wart,
the red-deer started was,

sô was sîn jungeste vart
so was its last run

7170 ie ze wazzer in den sê,
ever to water into the lake,

unde wart ouch nimmer mê
and was also never more

erloufen niender anderswâ
run-down anywhere elsewhere

wan under dem hûse dâ.
but under the house there.

und swes muot begunde gern
and whoever's spirit began to-desire

7175 ze jagen swîn oder bern,
to hunt boars or bears,

der vant ze dem genieze
he found for the purpose

vil starke breite spieze.
very strong broad spears.

und wolde er den hasen jagen,
and would he the hare hunt,

als ir ê hôrtent sagen,
as you before heard tell,

der mohte vinden

he could find

7180

den wunsch von hasenwinden.

the ideal of harebounds.

nû jage selbe swaz dû wilt.

now hunt thyself whatever thou wilt.

hie sint hunde unde wilt

here are bounds and game

und swaz ze jagen ist nütze,

and whatever to hunt is useful,

netze und guot geschütze,

nets and good shooting-gear,

7185

und swes fürbaz gert dîn muot.

and whatever further desires thy spirit.

hie was diu kurzwîle guot.

here was the pastime good.

Penefrec was ditz hûs genant,

Penefrec was this house named,

dâ man kein gebresten vant

where one no lack found

unde volleclichen rât,

and full provision,

7190

vische unde wiltprât,

fish and venison,

beide semeln unde wîn.

both white-bread and wine.

swaz dâ mêre solde sîn,

whatever there more should be,

vil lützel des dâ gebrast.

very little of-that there lacked.

dar umbe het den werden gast

there for had the worthy guest

7195

der wirt en ruowe dar brâht:

the host to rest thither brought:

wand im was des wol gedâht

for to-him was of-that well intended

daz er dâ mit sînem wîbe

that he there with his woman

wider kâme ze lîbe.

back should-come to life.

7200 ouch was dâ guot geræte

also was there good equipment

von rîcher bettewæte.

of rich bedclothes.

sîner frûmekeit ze lône

for-his prowess as reward

sô wart er dâ vil schône

so was he there very fairly

gewirdet unde gehalten:

honored and kept:

7205 vil schône wart gewalten

very fairly was cared-for

sîn und der kûnegîn.

of-him and of-the queen.

wer sol nû sîn arzet sîn

who shall now his physician be

der heile sîne wunden?

who may-heal his wounds?

dar zuo het er dâ funden

there to had he there found

7210 frouwen vil rîche,

ladies very rich,

edele, wætlîche,

noble, handsome,

des kûneges swester zwô.

the king's sisters two.

die wâren doch des vil frô

they were yet of-that very glad

und in ir herzen gemeit

and in their hearts joyful

daz er in alsô gereit

that he to-them so rode

7215

daz er ir dienst muose nemen.

that he their service must take.

der arzte moht in wol gezemen.

of-the physicians could them well befit.

sî heilten sîne wunden:

they healed his wounds:

wan si ez wol kunden.

for they it well knew-how.

ouch phlac sîn diu guote

also tended him the good-one

7220

mit vil getriuwer huote,

with very faithful care,

diu frouwe Ênîte.

the lady Enite.

dâ von wart sîn sîte

there from became his side

schône unde wol heil.

fairly and well healed.

sî heten des phlasters ein teil

they had of-the salve a part

7225

dâ von ich ê gesaget hân,

there of I before told have,

daz dâ Fâmurgân

which there Famurgan

hâte gemachet mit ir hant.

had made with her band.

des het in ze gebe gesant

of-that had them as gift sent

7230 frowe Ginovêr einen teil.

lady Guinevere a part.

daz was ouch dises mannes heil.

that was also this man's weal.

ûf dem hûs ze Penefrec

in the house at Penefrec

da entwelte der künec Êrec,

there tarried the king Erec,

unz er wol geheilet was

until he well healed was

7235 und sîner wunden genas,

and from-his wounds recovered,

rehte vierzehen naht.

right fourteen nights.

als im dô sînes lîbes maht

when to-him then his body's might

volleclîche wider wart,

fully back became,

dô hûgte er wider ûf die vart.

then thought he back upon the way.

7240 swie guot gemach dâ wære,

however good comfort there were,

im was dâ vil swære.

to-him was there very heavy.

der tugenthafte man

the virtuous man

zwâre er dâhte von dan

truly he thought from thence

vol alsô balde

fully as soon

als er in einem walde

as he in a forest

7245

wære âne obedach,

were without shelter,

eine ân allen gemach,

alone without all comfort,

dâ den unvalschen degen

where the unfalse thane

beide wint unde regen

both wind and rain

vil sêre muote.

very sorely troubled.

7250

daz kam von dem muote

that came from the spirit

daz im kein werltsache

that to-him no worldly-thing

was vor dem gemache

was before the comfort

dâ er ritterschaft vant

where he knighthood found

und dâ er mit sîner hant

and where he with his hand

7255

die sêre muoste urborn.

it sorely must earn.

ditz leben hâte er erkorn.

this life had he chosen.

im was dâ mit nihte baz:

to-him was there with nothing better:

ez was sîn slâf und sîn maz.

it was his sleep and his food.

7260 die vierzehn naht, daz ist wâr,

the fourteen nights, that is true,

dûhten in als manec jâr.

seemed to-him as many years.

er enwolde dâ niht tweln mê

he would there not tarry more

und wære geriten, möhter, ê.

and would-have ridden, could-be, before.

Enite's Palfrey

XI

Since Enite lost her palfrey at Limors, Guivreiz's sisters give her a finer one than anyone ever owned. One side is white and the other black, divided by a green stripe from muzzle to tail. Its form is so flawless that a wise man could not improve it in eight years. Guivreiz had taken it from a wild dwarf at a hollow mountain, refusing three thousand marks for it, and its rider seems to float.

owê der frowen Ênîten!

alas for-the lady Enite!

7265 waz sol doch sî nû rîten,

what shall yet she now ride,

diu schœne guote wol geborn?

the fair good-one well born?

wan sî het ir phärt verlorn,

for she had her palfrey lost,

als ir ê wol hōrtent sagen,

as you before well heard tell,

do der grâve Oringles wart erslagen
when the count Oringles was slain

ûf Limors und dô von dan
at Limors and then from thence

Êrec mit ir sô kûme entran.
Erec with her so scarcely escaped.

daz sî ez nû verlorn hât,
that she it now lost has,

des sol doch werden rât.
for-that shall yet become remedy.

sî wirt es wol ergetzet:
she becomes of-it well compensated:

wan man irz ersetzet,
for one to-her-it replaces,

daz sî ditz nimmer darf geklagen,
so-that she this never needs lament,

mit einem, als ich iu wil sagen,
with one, as I to-you will tell,

daz doch nie dehein man
that yet never any man

dehein schœnerz gewan
any fairer got

noch solde beschouwen.
nor should behold.

ditz gâben ir die vrouwen,
this gave to-her the ladies,

des kûneges swester zwô,
the king's sisters two,

unde wâren des vil frô
and were of-that very glad

daz siz geruochte von in nemen.
that she-it deigned from them take.

ouch mohte sis vil wol gezemen.
also might she-of-it very well befit.

7270

7275

7280

7285

frâget iemen mære

asks anyone tidings

ob ez schoener wære

whether it fairer were

dan daz se unz her geriten hât?

than that-which she until now ridden has?

ihr ahte vil unglîche stât.

their worth very unlike stands.

7290 alsô was ez gezieret:

thus was it adorned:

rehte geparrieret,

rightly parti-colored,

schilthalp garwe

on-the-shield-side wholly

mit vol blanker varwe,

with fully white color,

daz niht wîzers mohte sîn

that nothing whiter might be

7295 und alsô schœne daz der schîn

and so fair that the sheen

den ougen widerglaste.

to-the eyes reflected.

ez mohte niemen vaste

it might no-one steadily

keine wîle an gesehen:

any while at look:

des hôte ich im den meister jehen.

that heard I to-it the master declare.

7300 nû hete diu ander sîte

now had the other side

dirre ze widerstrîte

to-this in rivalry

gekêret allen ir vlîz.

turned all its diligence.

als gänzlichen wîz

as wholly white

sô disiu schilthalp was

as this shield-side was

von der ich iu nû dâ las,

of which I to-you now there read,

7305

alse swarz was disiu hie

as black was this-one here

dâ diu wîze abe gie.

where the white off went.

ez was swarz unde wîz.

it was black and white.

dirre misselîche vlîz

this various diligence

was schône unterscheiden.

was fairly divided.

7310

zwischen den varwen beiden

between the colors both

was ein strich über geleit

was a stripe over laid

wol eines halben vingers breit.

fully of-a half finger broad.

der strich grüne was

the stripe green was

unde rehte sam ein gras.

and right as a grass.

7315

an dem mûle er ane vienc:

at the muzzle it on began:

als ein penselstrich er gienc

as a brush-stroke it went

zwischen den ôren dan,

between the ears thence,

vil ebene über die man,

very evenly over the mane,

7320 engegen den goffen über den grât,
toward the croup over the spine,

unz dâ daz phärt ende hât,
until where the palfrey end has,

zwischen den brüsten nider alsam,
between the breasts down likewise,

als ez doch wol gezam.
as it yet well befitted.

ditz wâren seltsæniu dinc.
these were strange things.

7325 umb ietweder ouge gienc ein rinc
around each eye went a ring

der selben varwe, daz ist wâr.
of-the same color, that is true.

weich und reit was im daz hâr,
soft and curly was to-it the hair,

nâch dem teile gevangen
according-to the part taken

da ez hin was gehangen,
where it thither was hung,

7330 ze rehte dic und niht tief:
to right thick and not deep:

niht vol ez an diu knie swief.
not fully it to the knees swung,

der zoph was für daz houbet lanc,
the forelock was before the head long,

halp swarz, halp blanc,
half black, half white,

als in diu grüne varwe schiet.
as it the green color divided.

7335 der zagel alsam geriet.
the tail likewise turned-out.

sît ich nû gesaget hân
since I now told have
 wie daz phärt wære getân,
how the palfrey were made,
 wie ez anders wære gestalt
how it otherwise were shaped
 daz sol iu werden gezalt.
that shall to-you become told.
 ez was erwünschet alsô;
it was wished-perfect so;
 weder ze nider noch ze hô,
neither too low nor too high,
 weder ze kurz noch ze lanc,
neither too short nor too long,
 weder ze grôz noch ze kranc.
neither too great nor too slight.
 sîn durre houbet ez truoc
its lean head it bore
 nâch sînem rehte hôch genuoc,
according-to its right high enough,
 mit ragenden ôren niht lanc,
with pricking ears not long,
 daz eine swarz, daz ander blanc:
the one black, the other white:
 daz swarze ein wîzer rinc bevie,
the black a white ring encircled,
 ein swarzer umb daz wîze gie:
a black-one around the white went:
 sîn kel dic und ûf gezogen,
its throat thick and up drawn,
 ze rechter mâtze gebogen,
to right measure bent,
 kleine dâ se anz houbet gie:
slender where it to-the head went:

7340

7345

7350

geschaffen dort unde hie

shaped there and here

daz es iuch wol möhte lüsten:

that of-it you well might please:

7355 starc und wît zen brüsten:

strong and wide at-the breast:

mit dürrem gebeine,

with lean legs,

ze grôz noch ze kleine:

too great nor too small:

diu wâren flach unde sleht,

they were flat and smooth,

als einem tiere ûfreht.

as to-a beast upright.

7360 ez hete, sît ich ez loben muoz,

it had, since I it praise must,

kurzen vezzel, hôhen vuoz:

short fetlock, high hoof:

die wâren ouch ze rehte gar,

they were also to right wholly,

alle swarz gelîch var.

all black alike colored.

unde enwischte ez nimmer kneht,

and should-wipe it never groom,

7365 sô wærz doch schœne unde sleht.

so were-it yet fair and smooth.

alsô was sîn geschaft

so was its shape

daz von sîner meisterschaft

that from his mastery

ein werltwîser man

a world-wise man

der aller dinge ahte kan

who of-all things nature knows

niht bezzers betrahte,

nothing better would-devise,

7370

ob er in sîner ahte

if he in his thinking

aht ganzer jâre sæze

eight whole years should-sit

unde niht vergæze

and not should-forget

wan daz erpruofte sîn muot

but that devised his spirit

ein phârt schœne und volle guot.

a palfrey fair and fully good.

7375

alsô was ez gestalt.

so was it shaped.

und ob er danne den gewalt

and if he then the power

von dem Wunsche hæte,

from the Ideal had,

daz ez belibe stæte

that it should-remain steadfast

swes er dar zuo gedæhte,

whatever he there to should-think,

7380

und swenne erz volbræhte,

and when he-it should-accomplish,

daz erz für sich stalte

that he-it before himself set

und er von sîme gewalte

and he from his power

dar abe næme

there off should-take

7385 swaz dar an missezæme,

whatever there in would-ill-befit,

alsô was es volkomen

so was it perfect

daz er dar abe niht hete genomen

that he there off not would-have taken

alse grôz als umbein hâr.

as great as by-a hair.

spricht ieman 'er hât niht wâr',

(if)-says anyone 'he has not truth',

7390 dem bescheide ich die rede baz,

to-him explain I the matter better,

daz er rehte erkenne daz

that he rightly perceive that

diu rede wese ungelogen.

the account be unlied.

ez was dâ heime niht erzogen.

it was there at-home not bred.

ich sage iu wie ez dar was komen.

I tell you how it thither was come.

ez het der wirt selbe genomen

it had the host himself taken

7395

eim wilden getwerge

from-a wild dwarf

vor eime holen berge

before a hollow mountain

do er nâch sîner gwonheit

when he after his custom

den walt nâch âventiure reit.

the forest for adventure rode.

ez hetez vil vaste

it had-it very fast

7400

gebunden ze einem aste

bound to a branch

dô ez was gegangen dan.

when it was gone thence.

alsô vant ez dirre man.

so found it this man.

ab dem aste er ez nam.

from the branch he it took.

als daz getwerch wider kam

when the dwarf back came

7405

und ez daz phärt niene vant

and it the palfrey not-at-all found

an dem boume darz ez bant,

at the tree where-it it bound,

grôz was sîn ungemach.

great was its discomfort.

und als ez daz phärt ersach

and when it the palfrey saw

in fremder gewalt,

in strange power,

7410

dô wart vil manecvalt

then became very manifold

sîn schrîen und sîn weinen

its crying and its weeping

und gunde wol erscheinen

and began well to-show

des phârdes güete.

the palfrey's goodness.

7415 mit grôzem ungemüete

with great distress

weinde ez vil starke.

wept it very strongly.

driu tûsent marke

three thousand marks

bôt ez im von golde

offered it him of gold

daz er imz lâzen wolde.

that he to-it-it leave would.

7420 nu versprach er swaz ez im bôt:

now refused he whatever it him offered:

sîner habe was im unnôt:

of-its possessions was to-him no-need:

alsô fuorte erz von dan.

so led he-it from thence.

nû huop der wênige man

now raised the little man

von jâmer alsô grôzen schal

from misery so great din

7425 daz im der berc engegen hal.

that to-him the mountain back echoed.

daz satellîn daz dar ûf lac,

the little-saddle that there upon lay,

swer daz mit golde widerwac,

whoever that with gold weighed-against,

nâch sînem rehte erz niht galt.
according-to its right he-it not paid.

dâ von wirt iu niht mêre gezalt,
there of becomes to-you not more told,

daz ich die rede iht lenge,
lest I the account at-all lengthen,

7430

wan ez was doch ze enge
for it was yet too narrow

einem gewachsen man.
for-a grown man.

und als erz ûz dem walde dan
and when he-it out-of the forest thence

ze Penefrec brâhte,
to Penefrec brought,

er gabez den ers gedâhte,
he gave-it to-whom he-it intended,

7435

sînen swesteren zwein:
to-his sisters two:

dar an ez vil wol schein
there by it very well showed

daz er sî liep hâte:
that he them dear held:

wan ez truoc sanfte und drâte,
for it carried gently and swiftly,

unde sage iu rehte wie.
and tell you right how.

7440

swenn ez den fuoz zer erde lie,
whenever it the foot to-the earth let,

sô trat ez alsô lîse

so trod it so softly

daz niemen wær sô wîse

that no-one were so wise

der ze deheiner stunde

who at any hour

7445 den trit gehoeren kunde.

the tread hear could.

swer dar ûf gesaz,

whoever there upon sat,

zwâre sage ich iu daz,

truly tell I you that,

daz er dar ûf lebte

that he there upon lived

rehte sam er swebte.

right as-if he floated.

7450 wan daz ez niht rehte kæme

but that it not rightly would-come

unde ein teil missezæme

and a part would-ill-befit

von einem phârde alsô vil

of a palfrey so much

ze sprechen (des ichz lâzen wil),

to speak (therefore I-it leave will),

sô möhte ich wunder von im sagen:

so might I wonder of it tell:

7455 sus wil ich lobes mêre gedagen.

thus will I of-praise more be-silent.

wan sagen swaz sî wellen,

but let-say whatever they will,

sî mugen vil zellen

they may much recount

unde sprechen ir muot,

and speak their mind,

ez kom doch phärt nie sô guot
there came yet palfrey never so good

in deheines mannes gwalt:
into any man's power:

waz sol iu mê dâ von gezalt?
what shall to-you more there of told?

7460

The Saddle

XII

Enite's saddle is the work of the master Umbriz, three and a half years in the making. Hartman, the narrator, hesitates to describe it, and an imagined listener guesses hornbeam, gold, and scarlet cloth, which Hartman mocks. It is ivory, gems, and gold, carved with the tale of Troy and of Aeneas, Dido, and Lavinia. The saddlecloth shows the earth and its beasts and the sea and its creatures, and Hartman tells the curious to stay at home.

als uns der meister seite,
as to-us the master said,

ein frouwen gereite
a lady's saddle-gear

wart ûf daz phärt geleit,
was upon the palfrey laid,

dâ meisterlicher arbeit
where of-masterly labor

7465

vil werkes ane lac.
much of-work on lay.

ez het geworht vil manegen tac
it had wrought very many-a day

der wercwîseste man
the work-wisest man

der satelwerkes ie began.
who saddle-work ever undertook.

- 7470 ein meister hiez Umbrîz,
a master was-called Umbriz,
 der doch allen sînen vlîz
who yet all his diligence
 dar leite fûr wâr
thereon laid for true
 wol vierdehalp jâr,
fully three-and-a-half years,
 unz er in volbrâhte
until he it accomplished
- 7475 dar nâch als er gedâhte.
there after as he intended.
 daz ich iu rehte seite
that I to-you rightly should-tell
 von diseme gereite,
of this saddle-gear,
 wie daz erziuget wære,
how that furnished were,
 daz wurde ze swære
that would-become too heavy
- 7480 eime als tumben knehte:
for-a so foolish fellow:
 und ob ichz abe rehte
and if I-it however rightly
 iu nû gesagen kunde,
to-you now tell could,
 sô wærz mit einem munde
so were-it with one mouth
 iu ze sagenne al ze lanc:
to-you to tell all too long:
- 7485 ouch tuot daz mînen sin ze kranc,
also makes that my wit too weak,
 daz ich den satel nie gesach.
that I the saddle never saw.

wan als mir dâ von bejach
but as to-me there of declared

von dem ich die rede hân,
from whom I the story have,

sô wil ich iuch wizzen lân
so will I you know let

ein teil wie er geprüevet was,
a part how it devised was,

als ich an sînem buoche las,
as I in his book read,

sô ich kurzlîchest kan.
as I most-briefly can.

‘nû swîc, lieber Hartman:
‘now be-silent, dear Hartman:

ob ich ez errâte.’
whether I it guess.’

ich tuon: nû sprechet drâte.
I do: now speak quickly.

‘ich muoz gedenken ê dar nâch.’
‘I must think first there after.’

nû vil drâte: mir ist gâch.
now very quickly: to-me is hasty.

‘dunk ich dich danne ein wîser man?’
‘seem I to-thee then a wise man?’

jâ ir. durch got, nû saget an.
yes you. for God, now tell on.

‘ich wil ditz mære sagen.’
‘I will this tale tell.’

daz ander lâze ich iuch verdagen.
the other let I you keep-silent.

‘er was guot hagenbüechîn.’
‘it was good hornbeam-wooden.’

jâ. wâ von möhter mêre sîn?
yes. where from might-it more be?

7490

7495

7500

‘mit liehtem golde übertragen.’

‘with bright gold overlaid.’

7505 wer mohte iuz doch rehte sagen?

who could to-you-it yet rightly tell?

‘vil starke gebunden.’

‘very strongly bound.’

ir habt ez rehte erfunden.

you have it rightly found-out.

‘dar ûf ein scharlachen.’

‘there upon a scarlet-cloth.’

des mac ich wol erlachen.

of-that may I well laugh.

7510 ‘seht daz ichz rehte errâten kan.’

‘see that I-it rightly guess can.’

jâ, ir sît ein weterwîser man.

yes, you are a weather-wise man.

‘dû redest sam ez sî dîn spot.’

‘thou speakest as-if it be thy mockery.’

wê, nein ez, durch got.

woe, no it, for God.

‘jâ stêt dir spotlîch der munt.’

‘indeed stands to-thee mockingly the mouth.’

7515 ich lache gerne ze aller stunt.

I laugh gladly at all hours.

‘so habe ichz doch errâten?’

‘so have I-it yet guessed?’

jâ dâ sî dâ trâten.

yes where they there trod.

‘ich habe lîhte etwaz verdaget?’

‘I have perhaps something kept-silent?’

jane wîzt ir hiute waz ir saget.

indeed-not know you today what you say.

7520 ‘hân ich danne niht wâr?’

‘have I then not truth?’

niht als grôz als umbein hâr.

not as great as by-a hair.

‘hân ich danne gar gelogen?’

‘have I then wholly lied?’

niht, iuch hât sus betrogen

no, you has thus deceived

iuwer kintlicher wân.

your childish fancy.

ir sult michz iu sagen lân.

you shall me-it to-you tell let.

seht wie grôz ein grûz sî:

see how great a grain be:

sô vil was dâ niht holzes bî.

so much was there not of-wood by.

er was von helfenbeine

it was of ivory

und von edelem gesteine

and of noble gems

joch von dem besten golde

and of the best gold

daz ie werden solde,

that ever become should,

geliutert in dem fiure:

refined in the fire:

valsch was im tiure.

falseness was to-it scarce.

von disen mâterjen drin

of these materials three

sô hete des meisters sin

so had the master's wit

geprüvet ditz gereite

devised this saddle-gear

mit grôzer wîsheite.

with great wisdom.

7525

7530

7535

er gap dem helfenbeine

he gave to-the ivory

und dâ bî dem gesteine

and there by to-the gems

7540 sîn gevellige stat,

its fitting place,

als in diu Gefuoge bat.

as him the Seemliness bade.

er mischte dar under

he mixed there among

danne golt besunder,

then gold apart,

daz muoste dez werc zesamen haben.

that must the work together hold.

7545 an disem gereite was ergraben

on this saddle-gear was engraved

daz lange liet von Troyâ.

the long lay of Troy.

ze aller vorderst stuont dâ

at all foremost stood there

wie des wart begunnen

how of-it was begun

daz sî was gewunnen

that it was won

7550 unz daz sî wart zerstœret:

until that it was destroyed:

dâ mite was dâ gehœret.

there with was there belonging.

dâ engegen ergraben was

there opposite engraved was

wie der herre Ênêas,

how the lord Aeneas,

der vil listige man,

the very cunning man,

- über sê fuor von dan, 7555
over sea fared from thence,
- und wier ze Kartâgô kam,
and how-be to Carthage came,
- und wie in in ir gnâde nam
and how him into her favor took
- diu rîche frouwe Dîdô,
the mighty lady Dido,
- unde wie er sî dô
and how he her then
- vil ungeselleclîchen liez 7560
very uncompanionably left
- und leiste ir niht des er gehiez:
and performed to-her not what he promised:
- sus wart diu frouwe betrogen.
thus was the lady deceived.
- an dem hindern satelbogen
on the rear saddle-bow
- sô was einhalb ergraben
so was on-one-side engraved
- ir vil starkez missehaben 7565
her very strong distress
- und wie si im boten sande,
and how she him messengers sent,
- swie lützel si ins erwande.
however little she him-of-it turned.

bescheidenlîche stuont hie

distinctly stood here

swaz er dingas begie

whatever he of-things did

7570 daz sagebære wesen mac

that worth-telling be may

von der zît unz an den tac

from the time until to the day

daz er Laurente betwanc.

that he Laurentum subdued.

daz wær ze sagenne ze lanc

that were to tell too long

wie ers in sînen gwalt gewan.

how he-it into his power got.

7575 jenhalp stuont dar an

on-that-side stood there on

wie er die frowen Lavînam

how he the lady Lavinia

ze êlichem wîbe nam

to wedded woman took

und wie dâ ze lande was

and how there in land was

gewalteger herre Ênêas

mighty lord Aeneas

7580 ân alle missewende

without all blemish

unz an sîns lîbes ende.

until to his life's end.

dâ mite der satel was bedaht,

there with the saddle was covered,

daz was ein phelle wol geslaht,

that was a silk-cloth well made,

so er beste wesen solde

as it best be should

von sîden und von golde.

of silk and of gold.

der phelle was ze rehte tief:

the silk-cloth was to right deep:

vil nâ er zuo der erde swief.

very near it to the earth swung.

dâ stuonden an besunder

there stood on apart

al der werlde wunder

all the world's wonders

und swaz der himel besliuzet.

and whatever the heaven encloses.

ob iuch es niht verdriuzet,

if you of-it not wearies,

sô wil ich iu ir ein teil sagen

so will I to-you of-them a part tell

und doch michels mê verdagen

and yet much more keep-silent

diu vier elementâ

the four elements

stuonden schînlichen dâ

stood there visibly

in ir sundervarwe,

in their particular-color,

und in ieglichem garwe

and in each wholly

swaz dem undertæ nec ist:

whatever to-it subject is:

ditz meistert ouch starker list.

this mastered also strong art.

7585

7590

7595

- 7600 diu erde von den vieren
the earth of the four
 stuont mit ir tieren,
stood with its beasts,
 swaz der dehein man
whatever of-them any man
 in sînem muote erkennen kan
in his mind recognize can
 an walde od an gevilde,
in forest or in field,
- 7605 zam oder wilde:
tame or wild:
 dâ stuont diu menschliche schaft,
there stood the human creature,
 geworht von solher meisterschaft
wrought with such mastery
 sam ez wolde sprechen
as-if it would speak
 und bildes reht brechen.
and image's right break.
- 7610 dâ bî daz mer swebte:
there by the sea hovered:
 dar inne sam ez lebte
there in as-if it lived
 der visch, bî den besunder
the fish, by them apart
 elliu merwunder
all sea-wonders
 und swaz dâ bûwet smeres grunt.
and whatever there dwells the-sea's ground.
- 7615 der tæte mir der namen kunt,
he would-make to-me of-the names known,

ich wolt sî gerne erkennen

I would them gladly know

und kunnen genennen.

and be-able to-name.

dar zuo suocht iu einen man

there to seek for-yourselves a man

der iu sî wol genennen kan:

who to-you them well name can:

vindet ir des danne niht

(if)-find you of-that then not

(daz ouch vil lîhte geschiht),

(which also very easily happens),

sô volget mînem râte

so follow my counsel

und macht iuch ûf drâte,

and make yourselves up quickly,

varent selbe zuo dem mer:

fare yourselves to the sea:

dâ vindt ir inne, deist ein her.

there find you within, that-is a host.

gêt an den stat stân

go on the shore to-stand

unde bitent sî gân

and bid them go

ûz ze iu an den sant:

out to you onto the sand:

dâ werdent sî iu erkant.

there become they to-you known.

hilfet danne daz niht

(if)-helps then that not

(daz aber lîhte geschiht),

(which however easily happens),

sô suochent selbe den grunt:

so seek yourselves the ground:

7620

7625

7630

dâ werdents iu danne kunt

there become-they to-you then known

mit grôzem schaden, mit lützelz frumen.

with great harm, with little profit.

7635 nû râte ich mînen friunden sumen

now counsel I my friends some

daz sî die niugerne lân

that they the curiosity leave

und hie heime bestân.

and here at-home stay.

swes ein man wol al den tac

of-whatever a man well all the day

sô rehte lihte engelten mac

so right easily pay may

7640 und nimmer geniezen,

and never profit,

des lât iuch, friunde, erdriezen.

of-that let you, friends, weary.

The Saddlecloth, and the Road from Penefrec

XIII

The saddlecloth also shows the air with its birds and fire with its dragons, outshining the covering of Jupiter and Juno. The stirrups are golden dragons, the cushion shows Thisbe and Pyramus, a golden net set with rubies covers the croup, and a carbuncle on the bridle gives light at night. Enite, Erec, and Guivreiz take leave of his sisters, Filledamur and Genteflur, and set out for King Arthur's court, looking for it at Karidol or Tintajol.

dâ stuont ouch daz dritte bi.

there stood also the third by.

frâget ir waz daz sî?

ask you what that be?

der luft in sîner ahte.

the air in its nature.

die voge le maneger slahte

the birds of-many kind

7645

swebten dar inne,

hovered there in,

geweben mit solhem sinne,

woven with such skill,

rehte sam sî lebten

right as-if they lived

und ûf zen lûften strebten.

and up to-the airs strove.

daz fiur mit sînen trachen

the fire with its dragons

7650

und mit andern sachen

and with other things

die des fiures müezen leben,

which of-the fire must live,

die sach man ouch dar inne sweben.

them saw one also there in hover.

diu ende ein lîste bevie

the ends a border encircled

diu nider zuo der erde gie:

which down to the earth went:

7655

diu was einer hende breit,

it was of-a hand broad,

mit edelem gesteine beleit.

with noble gems laid.

daz lachen was doch rîch genuoc

the cloth was yet rich enough

daz Jûpiter ze decke truoc

which Jupiter as covering bore

und diu gotinne Jûnô,

and the goddess Juno,

7660

dô sî in ir rîche hô

when they in their realm high

ime brûtstuole sâzen:

in-the bridal-throne sat:

daz möhte sich gemâzen

that might itself compare

disem sateltuoche als vil

to-this saddle-cloth as much

7665 als ich iu sagen wil,

as I to-you tell will,

sam der mâne der sunnen.

as the moon to-the sun.

ir sult mir des wol gunnen

you shall to-me of-that well grant

daz ich iu sage die wârheit.

that I to-you tell the truth.

beide guot unde gemeit

both good and splendid

7670 wâr die stegereife,

were the stirrups,

breite goltreife,

broad gold-rings,

gebildet nâch zwein trachen.

shaped after two dragons.

sî kunde wol gemachen

them could well make

des goltsmides hant

the goldsmith's hand

7675 der sichs ze vlîze underwant.

who himself-of-it with diligence undertook.

die zagele sî ze munde bugen:

the tails they to mouth bent:

ir vedern stuonden sam sî flugen:

their feathers stood as-if they flew:

ir ougen wâren steine,
their eyes were stones,

vier jâchande kleine.
four jacinths small.

wes was dirre deweder,
of-what was of-these either,

7680

darmgürtel joch stîcleder?
girth and stirrup-leather?

ir müest daz werc wol besehen
you must the work well examine

ê ir westent wes ir soldent jehen,
before you knew what you should declare,

ob ez von golde wær durchslagen
whether it with gold were worked-through

oder mit sîden undertragen.
or with silk interwoven.

7685

daz ez borten solden sîn,
that it braids should be,

dazn wurde iu an den bilden schîn
unless should-become to-you in the images evident

od ir begriffetz mit der hant,
or you grasped-it with the hand,

ez wære iu immer unerkannt.
it were to-you ever unknown.

die rîngen wâren silberîn.
the buckles were silver.

7690

war umbe? daz man wîzen schîn
what for? that one white shewn

vor dem golde sæhe,
before the gold might-see,

veste unde spæhe.
firm and artful.

vil guot was daz panel,
very good was the saddle-pad,

- 7695 niht eines kalbes vel,
not a calf's hide,
- der ich doch manegez hân gesehen:
of-which I yet many-a-one have seen:
- dâ kunde niemen an erspehen
there could no-one on espy
- leder eines nagels breit:
leather of-a nail broad:
- ez was guot unde gemeit,
it was good and splendid,
- 7700 als ez dem satele gezam
as it the saddle befitted
- unde im wol ze mâze kam,
and to-it well to measure came,
- gefüllet prîslîchen wol,
stuffed praiseworthy well,
- linde sam ein boumwol,
soft as a cotton,
- daz ez daz phârt niht zebrach.
that it the palfrey not chafed.
- 7705 swaz man sîn vor dem satel sach,
whatever one of-it before the saddle saw,
- daz was gesteppeet dicke.
that was quilted thick.
- ze guotem anblicke
for good sight
- was dar an entworfen sus
was there on sketched thus
- wie Tispê und Pîramus,
how Thisbe and Pyramus,
- 7710 betwungen von der minne,
compelled by the love,
- beheret rehter sinne,
bereft of-right senses,

ein riuwic ende nâmen

a rueful end took

dô sî zem brunnen kâmen.

when they to-the spring came.

daz die vassen solden sîn,

what the fringes should be,

daz was ein netze guldîn,

that was a net golden,

7715

gebriten von golddrâten

braided of gold-threads

vesten unde stâten,

firm and steady,

über die goffen zerbreit.

over the croup spread.

dar umbe wâren geleit

there about were laid

edele steine genuoge,

noble stones many,

7720

an ieglicher fuoge,

at each joint,

dâ sich die maschen strihten,

where themselves the meshes crossed,

kriuzewîs sî sich schihten.

crosswise they themselves ordered.

an iegliches knophes stat

at each knot's place

was ein rubîn ûf gesat

was a ruby up set

7725

in lâsûrvarwe kasten.

in azure-colored settings.

die steine dar ûz glasten,

the stones there out gleamed,

einer hande garwe,
of-one kind wholly,

vol lichter varwe.
full of-bright color.

7730 guot unde gefüege
good and fitting

was daz fürbüege,
was the breast-strap,

starc unde vil gemeit,
strong and very splendid,

ein borte zweier vinger breit,
a braid of-two fingers broad,

nâch dem zoume volkomen
after the bridle perfected

7735 der an daz phärt was genomen.
which on the palfrey was put.

ez wâr verworht dar inne
there were worked there in

mit schœnem sinne
with fair skill

die einlif edeln steine:
the eleven noble stones:

der zwelfte der was eine
the twelfth it was alone

7740 vor in den zom geleit
before in the bridle laid

in eine schiben, diu was breit,
in a disk, which was broad,

diu nider für den zoph gie
which down before the forelock went

unde vor dem haupte hie.
and before the head hung.

der liechte carbunculus,
the bright carbuncle,

da behielt er sîn ambet sus

there kept it its office thus

7745

(wan im daz lieht ist geslaht),

(for to-it the light is native),

ob im ze vinsterre naht

if to-him at dark night

ze rîtenne geschæhe,

to ride should-happen,

daz man dâ von gesæhe.

that one there by might-see.

die einlif wâren hin geleit,

the eleven were thither laid,

7750

an daz fürbüege zerbreit

on the breast-strap spread

zwischen den gehangen.

between the pendants.

guote goltklangen

good gold-bells

die hôt man verre klingen.

them heard one far ring.

von sus getânen dingen

of so made things

7755

was der satel volbrâht

was the saddle accomplished

und baz dan ich es habe gedâht.

and better than I of-it have thought.

zwâre ouch bedunket mich

truly also seems-it to-me

reht unde billich

right and fitting

7760 daz er mit vollem mære

that it by full account

vil schoener wære

much fairer were

dan dehein ander gereite:

than any other saddle-gear:

wande er mit wârheite

for it with truth

dem schoensten wîbe wart gegeben

to-the fairest woman was given

7765 diu in den jâren mohte leben,

who in the years might live,

der edeln frouwen Ênîten.

the noble lady Enite.

nû ist zît daz sî rîten,

now is time that they ride,

wande in sint diu ros komen.

for to-them are the horses come.

habent sî danne urloup genomen

have they then leave taken

7770 von dem ingesinde?

from the household?

von kinde ze kinde

from child to child

und von des küneges swestern.

and from the king's sisters.

man solte willen vestern

one should will firmer

vor noch sît beschouwen

before nor since behold

an keinen andern frouwen

in any other ladies

7775

ze aller slahte guote.

to of-all kind good.

zuht was in ir huote.

breeding was in their keeping.

die frouwen habent ez alsô brâht

the ladies have it so brought

daz ir von rehte wirt gedâht

that of-them by right becomes thought

in der vordersten zal

in the foremost number

7780

swâ guoter wîbe wirdet wal.

wherever of-good women becomes choice.

swâ mite ein wîp gedienen sol

wherever with a woman earn shall

daz sî gote und der werlde wol

that she God and the world well

von schulden muoz gevallen,

by right must please,

des phlâgen se âne gallen,

that practiced they without gall,

7785

mîn frouwe Filledâmûr

my lady Filledamur

und ir swester Genteflûr.

and her sister Genteflur.

nû riten sî von dan,

now rode they from thence,

Ênîte und dise zwêne man,

Enite and these two men,

- 7790 der wirt selbe und Êrec.
the host himself and Erec.
- daz phärt truoc dô den wec
the palfrey bore then the way
- sô sanfte frowen Ênîten
so gently lady Enite
- daz jener ze keinen zîten
that that-one at no times
- eins hâres sanfter niht enlebet
of-a hair's gentler at-all lives
- 7795 der ûf dem ebenwâge swebet
who on the calm-sea floats
- so er den wint ze wunsche hât
when he the wind to wish has
- und im sîn schef ân angest gât.
and to-him his ship without fear goes.
- si gedâhten reisen dâ zehant
they thought to-journey there at-once
- ze Britanje in daz lant
to Britain into the land
- 7800 zuo dem kûnege Artûse.
to the king Arthur.
- ûf welhem sînem hûse
at which his house
- sî in benamen funden,
they him assuredly should-find,
- dazn westens zuo den stunden.
that-not knew-they at the hours.

der künec Guivreiz dô sprach

the king Guivreiz then said

dô in ze rîtenne geschach

when to-them to ride happened

‘wir vinden in ze Karidôl

‘we find him at Karidol

oder benamen ze Tintajôl.’

or assuredly at Tintajol.’

7805

Brandigan, and Guivreiz’s Warning

XIV

Taking the better-made road at a crossroads, they come to a castle on a round rock, with thirty gold-topped towers above a deep gorge and a rich town and a wide orchard on its other side. Guivreiz curses his mistake and begs Erec to turn back. At last he names the castle Brandigan, where many good knights have come for an adventure and all been slain. Erec will not turn back until he knows what the adventure is.

sus riten sî nâch wâne,

thus rode they by guess,

und doch der gwisheit âne,

and yet of-the certainty without,

unz hin umbe mitten tac.

until on about mid day,

nû truoc sî der huofslac

now bore them the hoof-track

ûf einer schœnen heide

upon a fair heath

an eine wegescheide.

to a crossroads.

7810

weder ze Britanje in daz lant

which to Britain into the land

7815 gienge, daz was in unerkant.

went, that was to-them unknown.

die rehten strâze sî vermiten:

the right road they missed:

die baz gebûwen sî riten.

the better built they rode.

und dô sî nâch der wîle

and when they after the while

geriten wol fünf mîle,

ridden fully five miles,

7820 ein burc sî sâhen vor in stân,

a castle they saw before them stand,

michel unde wol getân.

great and well made.

und als sî Guivreiz ersach,

and when it Guivreiz saw,

daz wart im vil ungemach

that became to-him very troublesome

und begunde in vaste beswæren

and began him greatly to-grieve

7825 daz sî dar komen wæren.

that they thither come were.

‘nû sage, von wiu?’ daz weiz ich wol

‘now say, from what?’ that know I well

und sagez sô ichz sagen sol.

and tell-it as I-it tell shall.

des enist noch niht zît.

of-that is yet not time.

wie bitelôs ir sît!

how impatient you are!

7830 wer sol sîn mære fürsagen?

who shall its tale tell-beforehand?

ich enwil iuch niht verdagen

I will from-you not keep-silent

wie diu burc geschaffen wære:

how the castle made were:

daz vernement an dem mære.

that hear in the tale.

vil guot was daz burcstal.

very good was the castle-site.

als uns der âventiure zal

as to-us the adventure's account

urkunde dâ von gît,

testimony there of gives,

sô was ez zwelf huoben wît.

so was it twelve hides wide.

ez was ein sinweller stein

it was a round rock

dâ niender bûhel ane schein,

where nowhere hillock on appeared,

eben sam er wære gedrân,

even as-if it were turned,

und ouch rehte getân

and also rightly made

nâch des Wunsches werde,

after the Ideal's worth,

ûf von der erde

up from the earth

entwachsen wol den mangeln.

outgrown well the mangonels.

den berc het in gevangen

the mountain had in enclosed

ein burcmûr hôch unde dic.

a castle-wall high and thick.

7835

7840

7845

ein ritterlicher anblîc

a knightly sight

zierte dez hûs innen.

adorned the house within.

ez rageten für die zinnen

there towered before the battlements

7850 türne von quâdern grôz,

towers of ashlars great,

der fuoge niht zesamene slôz

whose joints not together closed

kein sandic phlaster:

any sandy mortar:

sî wârn gebunden vaster,

they were bound more-firmly,

mit îsen und mit blîe,

with iron and with lead,

7855 ie drîe unde drîe

ever three and three

nâ zesamene gesat.

near together set.

dâ enzwischen was diu stat

there between was the place

gezimbers niht lære.

of-building not empty.

dâ sâzen die burgære

there dwelt the burghers

7860 nâch grôzer ir werdekeit.

according-to great their dignity.

alsô was daz hûs zerbreit

so was the house spread

mit den türnen. nâch ir zal

with the towers. according-to their number

sô was ir drîzic über al.

so was of-them thirty over all.

sus was daz hûs gevieret:

thus was the house squared:

die türne gezieret

the towers adorned

7865

oben mit goltknophen rôt,

above with gold-knobs red,

der ieglicher verre bôt

of-which each far offered

in daz lant sînen glast.

into the land its gleam.

daz bewîste den gast

that directed the guest

dem dar ze varne geschach,

to-whom there to fare happened,

7870

daz er den schîn verre sach

that he the sheen far saw

und er des hûses ûf der vart

and he of-the house on the way

des tages niht verirret wart.

in-the day not misled was.

ein wazzer drunder hin flôz,

a water thereunder away flowed,

des val gap michelen dôz:

whose fall gave great noise:

7875

wan ez durch ein gevelle lief.

for it through a gorge ran.

daz selbe tal was alsô tief,

the same valley was so deep,

swer ûf die zinnen sitzen gie

whoever onto the battlements to-sit went

und er ze tal diu ougen lie,

and he to valley the eyes let,

- 7880 den dûhte daz gevelle
to-him seemed the gorge
 sam er sæhe in die helle:
as-if he should-look into the hell:
 der swindel in ze tal zôch,
the dizziness him to valley drew,
 sô daz er wider in flôch.
so that he back in fled.
 an der anderen sîten
on the other side
- 7885 dâ man zuo mohte rîten,
where one toward could ride,
 dâ stuont ein stat vil rîche,
there stood a town very rich,
 bezimbert rîchlîche,
built richly,
 diu einhalb an daz wazzer gie:
which on-one-side to the water went:
 anderhalb daz undervie
on-the-other-side that underlay
- 7890 ein boumgart schoene unde wît,
an orchard fair and wide,
 daz weder vor noch sît
that neither before nor since
 dehein schoener wart gesehen:
any fairer was seen:
 des hôte ich im den meister jehen.
that heard I to-it the master declare.
 als Êrec daz hûs ersach,
when Erec the house saw,
- 7895 ze sîme gesellen er sprach,
to his comrade he spoke,
 ob er die burc erkande,
whether he the castle knew,

und baten daz er sî nande.
and asked-him that he it should-name.

sus antwurte im der herre,
thus answered him the lord,

‘ich erkenne sî: wir sîn verre
‘I know it: we are far

geriten von unser strâze.
ridden from our road.

7900

daz ez got verwâze!
may it God curse!

iedoch sô manege zîte
yet so many times

so ich disen wec rîte,
as I this way ride,

sô ist mir boeslîch geschehen:
so is to-me badly happened:

ich hân mich übele übersehen,
I have myself ill misjudged,

7905

gezeiget zuo der vinstern want.’
directed to the dark wall.’

er sprach ‘Britanje daz lant
he said ‘Britain the land

des endes verre hin lît.
in-that direction far away lies.

kêre wir wider enzît.
turn we back betimes.

ich bringe iuch wider ûf den wec.’
I bring you back onto the way.’

7910

dô sprach der künec Êrec
then said the king Erec

‘wie zæme uns daz, vil edel man,
‘how would-befit us that, very noble man,

daz wir sus riten dan?
that we thus should-ride thence?

sît wir sô nâhen komen sîn,
since we so near come are,

7915 sô volget durch den willen mîn,
so follow for the will my,

daz ich die burc müeze sehen.
that I the castle may see.

daz sol benamen geschehen.
that shall assuredly happen.

ditz hûs ist sô wünneclich
this house is so delightful

und alsô schœne daz ich
and so fair that I

7920 ûzen dar an kiuse wol,
outside there on discern well,

jâ ist ez etwes innen vol
indeed is it of-something within full

daz man gerne sol schouwen,
whicb one gladly shall behold,

ez enist niht âne frouwen.
it is not without ladies.

ich wil daz hûs erkunnen:
I will the house explore:

7925 des sult ir mir wol gunnen.'
that shall you to-me well grant.'

'mirst leit daz ich ius gunnen sol.
'to-me-is grievous that I to-you-of-it grant shall.

wê danne so irz bevindet wol!
woe then when you-it find-out well!

'waz meint ir, künec Guivreiz?'
'what mean you, king Guivreiz?'

'ich meine niht wan daz ich weiz.'
'I mean nothing but what I know.'

7930 'durch got, nû saget waz?'
'for God, now tell what?'

‘nû kêret wider. daz kumt uns baz.’

‘now turn back. that comes to-us better.’

‘mich wundert waz ir meinet.’

‘me wonders what you mean.’

‘ez wirt iu wol erscheinert,

‘it becomes to-you well shown,

unde welt ir niht erwinden.’

and (if)-will you not turn-back.’

‘ich muoz ez benamen ervinden.

‘I must it assuredly find-out.

7935

ez ist niht wirsers danne der tôt.’

it is nothing worse than the death.’

‘sô kumt ir lihte in die nôt

‘so come you easily into the distress

die iuwer friunt niht mugen verklagen.’

which your friends not may get-over.’

‘mugt ir mirz durch got nû sagen?

‘may you to-me-it for God now tell?

mich wundert waz ez müge sîn.’

me wonders what it may be.’

7940

‘da erwindet durch die liebe mîn.

‘there turn-back for the love my.

ich diene ez immer als ich sol.’

I repay it ever as I shall.’

‘daz enzæme mir niht wol:

‘that would-befit me not well:

wan sô möht ir haben wân

for so might you have belief

daz ich durch vorhte hete lân

that I for fear had left-off

7945

die selben reise.

the same journey.

ouchn ist dehein freise,

also is no peril,

irn möhtent sî mich wizzen lân:

unless-you might it me know let:

und wær sî danne sô getân

and were it then so made

7950 dar umbe ich solde erwinden,

there for I should turn-back,

daz lieze ich an mir vinden.'

that would-let I in me find.'

'her künec' sprach Guivreiz,

'sir king' said Guivreiz,

ich sagez rehte als ichz weiz:

I tell-it right as I-it know:

diu freise ist niht ze ringe:

the peril is not too slight:

7955 und ûf daz gedinge

and upon the condition

als iuwer munt gesprochen hât,

as your mouth spoken has,

daz ir dise reise lâ, t,

that you this journey leave,

sô wil ich iuchz wizzen lân.

so will I you-it know let.

ditz hûs heizet Brandigân,

this house is-called Brandigan,

7960 und ist vil manec ritter guot

and is very many-a knight good

durch sînen gnendigen muot

for his daring spirit

ûf âventiure her komen,

on adventure hither come,

die alle dar an habent genomen

who all there in have taken

schaden zuo den schanden,

harm to the disgraces,

die besten von den landen.

the best of the lands.

7965

des ist nû gewesen lanc

of-that is now been long

daz ir deheinem nie gelanc,

that of-them to-none ever succeeded,

wan allen gelîche,

but to-all alike,

sô daz sî klâgelîche

so that they lamentably

alle hie sint erslagen.

all here are slain.

7970

waz mag ich iu mêre sagen?

what may I to-you more say?

wan ich wil unde muoz

but I will and must

mich bieten an iuvern fuoz,

myself offer at your foot,

daz ir erwindt durch mînen rât.

that you turn-back for my counsel.

ein âventiure hie stât

an adventure here stands

7975

ze solhem gewinne

at such stake

daz ich in mînem sinne

that I in my mind

des vil grôze angest hân,

of-that very great fear have,

ez müeze iu alsam ergân

it may to-you likewise turn-out

als ez allen den ergie

as it to-all those turned-out

7980

die noch her kômen ie.'

who yet hither came ever.'

Êrec sus antwurten began,
Erec thus to-answer began,

‘sô wære ich ein verzaget man
‘so were I a cowardly man

und hete des missewende,
and would-have of-it blame,

7985 ich enweste der rede ein ende,
I unless-knew of-the matter an end,

solte ich sus erwinden.
should I thus turn-back.

muget ir mich lân bevinden,
may you me let learn,

waz ist ez oder waz hât ez namen?
what is it or what has it of-name?

ich müeste mich wol immer schamen,
I must myself well ever shame,

7990 solte ich fürchten neizwaz.
should I fear I-know-not-what.

nû war umbe tuot ir daz
now what for do you that

deir sô lange mich verdaget
that-you so long from-me conceal

daz ir mirs niht ende saget?
that you to-me-of-it not end tell?

wan swaz mir dâ von geschiht,
for whatever to-me there from happens,

7995 benamen ich erwinde niht
assuredly I turn-back not

unz ich die rede baz weiz.’
until I the matter better know.’

The Joy of the Court

XV

Guivreiz explains: the adventure is called the Joy of the Court, and in the orchard below the castle the host's nephew has slain every challenger. Erec laughs and says he had feared serpents and wild beasts, not one man. As they ride toward Brandigan, the dancing townspeople see Enite and murmur their lament for her and for the man who must die. Erec, who scorns omens, greets them laughing and strikes up a song.

dô sprach der künec Guivreiz

then said the king Guivreiz

‘nû wil ich iuch wizzen lân

‘now will I you know let

wie d’âventiure ist getân

how the-adventure is made

und rehte wiez dar umbe stât,

and rightly how-it there about stands,

8000

sît irs niht wellent haben rât.

since you-of-it not will have without.

si ist Joie de la curt genant.’

it is Joy of the court named.’

daz selbe wort ist unerkant

the same word is unknown

uns tiutschen liuten:

to-us German people:

durch daz wil ichz bediuten.

for that will I-it interpret.

8005

des hoves freude sprichet daz.

the court's joy says that.

ouch seit er im fûrbaz:

also told he him further:

er sprach ‘mugt ir warten?

he said ‘may you look?

seht ir den boumgarten

see you the orchard

8010 der under dem hûse lît?

which under the house lies?

dâ hât sich nû vil manege zît

there has himself now very many-a while

ein ritter gehalten inne.

a knight kept within.

sî stêt ze solhem gewinne

it stands at such stake

als ich iu rehte wil sagen.

as I to-you rightly will tell.

8015 swer sî hie sol bejagen,

whoever it here shall win,

daz hât er im ze rehte

that has he to-himself as right

daz ers an im ervehte.

that he-it from him win-by-fighting.

der wirt ist sîn œhein.

the host is his uncle.

als noch ie an im schein,

as yet ever in him appeared,

8020 sô lebet sîn gelîche

so lives his like

niender in dem rîche

nowhere in the realm

von sterke und ouch von manheit.

of strength and also of manhood.

swaz im riter noch widerreit,

whatever to-him knights yet against-rode,

die sî wolden bejagen,

who it would win,

8025 die hât er alle erslagen:

them has he all slain:

im mohte niht wider sîn.

him could nothing against be.

noch erwindet durch die liebe mîn.'

yet turn-back for the love my.'

dô sprancte der künec Êrec

then spurred the king Erec

vil sêre lachende ûf den wec.

very greatly laughing onto the way.

'edel ritter, nû wol dan!

'noble knight, now well thence!

und ist ez niuwan ein man

and (if)-is it only one man

an dem sî ze gewinne stât,

on whom it at stake stands,

des möhte werden guot rât.

of-that might become good remedy.

wâ mite machet irz sô grôz?

where with make you-it so great?

weder ist er berc od berges gnôz,

whether is he mountain or mountain's peer,

daz man in alsô fürhten sol?

that one him so fear shall?

ich wânde dez hûs wære vol

I thought the house were full

würme und wilder tiere

of-serpents and wild beasts

diu uns alsô schiere

which us so soon

ân wer den lîp næmen,

without defense the life should-take,

sô wir dar kæmen.

when we thither came.

noch hân ich zuo dem lebene wân.

yet have I to the life hope.

8030

8035

8040

er enwirt des niht erlân,
he becomes of-it not spared,

ob es got geruochet,
if of-it God deigns,

8045 ezn werde an im versuochet.
unless-it be on him tried.

sleht er mich, sô bin ich tôt:
(if)-slays he me, so am I dead:

daz ist der werlde ein ringiu nôt.
that is to-the world a slight distress.'

Guivreiz der künec guot
Guivreiz the king good

erkande in wol alsô gemuot
knew him well so minded

8050 daz er benamen volrite
that he assuredly would-ride-on

unde daz durch niemen mite.
and that for no-one would-forgo.

dâ von geschach im ungemach.
there from happened to-him discomfort.

dô er daz hûs von êrste an sach,
when he the house from first at looked,

ez half dehein widerstrîten,
it helped no resisting,

8055 er enwolde volrîten.
he would ride-on.

nû huoben sî sich ûf den wec.
now betook they themselves onto the way.

und als der künec Êrec
and when the king Erec

mit sînem schœnen wîbe,
with his fair woman,

ze freise sînem lîbe,
to peril for-his life,

- nû reit gegen Brandigân, 8060
now rode toward Brandigan,
- die stat dier drunder sach stân,
the town which-he thereunder saw stand,
- dâ was inne freuden vil,
there was within of-joys much,
- tanz und aller slahte spil
dance and of-all kind play
- daz jungen liuten wol gezam.
which to-young people well befitted.
- und als er zuo geriten kam 8065
and when he toward ridden came
- und sî die schoenen Ênîten
and they the fair Enite
- dâ für sâhen rîten
there before saw ride
- und nâch ir die zwêne man,
and after her the two men,
- nû sâhen sî die frouwen an
now looked they the lady at
- und gunde des mænlich jehen 8070
and began of-it every-man to-declare
- daz er unz dar nie gesehen
that he until then never seen
- deheine frouwen hæte
any lady had
- von lîbe und von wæte,
of person and of clothing,
- von phârde und von gereite,
of palfrey and of saddle-gear,
- sô schœne und sô gemeite. 8075
so fair and so splendid.

sâ ze den stunden

straightway at the hours

sî alle begunden,

they all began,

wîp und man beide,

woman and man both,

von nâ gêndem leide

from near going sorrow

8080 ir freuden entwîchen

their joys to-forsake

und vil jæmerlîchen

and very piteously

klagen daz wûnneclîche wîp,

to-lament the lovely woman,

und daz verliesen sînen lîp

and that lose his life

solde ein alsô frumer man:

should a so worthy man:

8085 wan dâ zwîveltens niht an.

for there doubted-they not on.

sî sprâchen 'herre, rîcher got,

they said 'lord, mighty God,

war umbe geschuof dîn gebot

what for created thy command

einen sô volkomen man?

a so perfect man?

dâ wære vol dîn gnâde an

there were full thy grace in

8090 daz dû in hætest bewart

that thou him hadst guarded

vor dirre leidigen vart,

from this woeful journey,

daz er niht wære komen:

that he not were come:

wan hie wirt im der lîp benomen.
for here becomes from-him the life taken.

owê dû vil armez wîp!
alas thou very poor woman!

wie dû queltest dînen lîp,
how thou wouldst-torment thy body, 8095

ob dû möhtest wizzen wol
if thou mightest know well

waz dir hie geschehen sol.
what to-thee here happen shall.

wie dîniu liehtiu ougen
how thy bright eyes

mit trüebe suln verlougen
with gloom shall deny

daz sî sô spillichen stânt
that they so playfully stand 8100

unde kumbers niht enhânt;
and of-affliction none have;

unde dîn vil rôter munt,
and thy very red mouth,

der die liute hie zestunt
which the people here at-once

dir engegen lachen tuot!
to-thee toward laugh makes!

und wie dû dînen gelpfen muot
and how thou thy merry spirit 8105

mit leide verkiusest,
with sorrow losest,

sô dû dînen man verliusest!
when thou thy man losest!

sî klagten et alle.
they lamented just all.

ditz geschach niht mit schalle:
this happened not with noise:

- 8110 ez wart mit murmel getân,
it was with murmur done,
 daz er sichs niht solde enstân.
that he himself-of-it not should perceive.
 der rede tâten sî genuoc.
of-the talk made they enough.
 manec wîp sich ze den brüsten sluoc,
many-a woman herself on the breasts struck,
 die andern sêre weinden.
the others sorely wept.
- 8115 waz sî dâ mite meinden,
what they there with meant,
 daz weste der tugentrîche
that knew the virtue-rich-one
 und tete dem niht gelîche
and did to-that not alike
 als er dar umbe iht weste.
as-if he there about aught knew.
 Êrec der muotveste
Erec the steadfast-of-spirit
- 8120 bedâht sich frœlîch unde wol,
bethought himself gladly and well,
 alsam der unverzagte sol
as the undaunted-one shall
 den man niht lîhte entsprechen mac.
whom one not easily dissuade may.
 keins swachen glouben er phlac.
of-no poor belief he practiced.
 er wolt der wîbe lîezen
he would of-the women soothsaying
- 8125 engelten noch geniezen.
pay-for nor profit.
 swaz im getroumen mahte,
whatever to-him dream might,

dar ûf hât er kein ahte:

there upon has he no heed:

er was kein wettersorgære:

he was no weather-worrier:

er sach im als mære

he saw for-himself as gladly

des morgens über den wec varn

in-the morning across the way fare

8130

die iuweln sam den mûsarn:

the owl as the buzzard:

ouch hiez er selten machen

also bade he seldom make

kein fiur ûz der spachen,

any fire out-of the kindling,

daz man in dar an sæhe:

that one to-him there on should-see:

er phlac deheiner spæhe:

he practiced no divination:

8135

ez was umbe in sô gewant,

it was about him so disposed,

im was der tisch in der hant

to-him was the table in the hand

als mære enge sô wît,

as welcome narrow as wide,

und swaz ungelouben gît

and whatever superstition gives

dâ enkêrte er sich niht an:

there turned he himself not to:

8140

er was ein alsô vester man,

he was a so firm man,

swie in daz volc untrôste,

however him the folk discouraged,

daz in daz niht belôste

that him that not robbed

sîner manlichen stætekeit

of-bis manly steadfastness

8145 gegen einem hâre breit;

by a hair's breadth;

und enphienc ez für spot.

and received it as mockery.

er gedâht 'die wîle und mich got

he thought 'the while that me God

wil in sîner huote hân,

will in his keeping have,

sô mac mir niht missegân:

so can to-me nothing go-wrong;

8150 unde wil er mirs niht bîten,

and (if)-will he me-of-it not spare,

sô mac ich ze disen zîten

so may I at these times

alsô mære sterben,

as gladly die,

so der lîp doch muoz verderben.'

since the body yet must perish.'

er was et herzen sorgen frî.

he was just of-heart's cares free.

8155 nû reit er zuo und gruozte sî

now rode he toward and greeted them

mit lachendem munde.

with laughing mouth.

nû huop er dâ ze stunde

now raised he there at once

ein vil frœlîchez liet:

a very joyful song;

nû murmelte aber diu diet

now murmured again the people

‘nû schînt dû wizzest niht wol

‘now seems thou knowest not well

8160

waz dir hie geschehen sol.

what to-thee here happen shall.

nû ist doch leider dar niht lanc

now is yet alas there not long

daz dîn frœlîch gesanc

that thy joyful singing

ein vil riuwic ende gît:

a very rueful end gives:

daz geschiht ê morne an dirre zît.

that happens before tomorrow at this time.

8165

möhtest dû wizen und dîn wîp

mightest thou know and thy woman

daz dû dînen gelpfen lîp

that thou thy merry person

solt als unlange hân,

shalt so not-long have,

sô liezest dû dîn singen stân.’

so wouldst-let thou thy singing stand.’

alsô reit von in dan

so rode from them thence

8170

der vil unverzagte man

the very undaunted man

ûf daz hûs ze Brandigân.

up-to the house at Brandigan.

dâ wart im sîn reht getân,

there was to-him his right done,

sô daz man in vil schône enphie.

so that one him very fairly received.

8175 der wirt gegen im gie
the host toward him went

verre für daz bürgetor:
far before the castle-gate:

dâ salûierte er in vor,
there saluted he him before,

mit im die burgære.
with him the burghers.

liep unde swære
dear and grievous

8180 was er im ze gaste.
was he to-him as guest.

er vorhte et des vil vaste,
he feared just of-that very greatly,

im wurde der lîp dâ benomen:
to-him would-be the life there taken:

anders was erm willekomen.
otherwise was he-to-him welcome.

daz tete der herre wol schîn
that made the lord well evident

8185 den zwein und der künegîn:
to-the two and to-the queen:

wan man ir ze rehte phlac.
for one of-them to right took-care.

dannoch was ez hôher tac.
still was it high day.

The Eighty Ladies

XVI

The host leads Erec, Enite, and Guivreiz up to a round marble hall where eighty ladies sit in black samite and plain white wimples, each seeming fairer than the last. Erec marvels that God has set so much beauty in so narrow a place and left it empty of joy. Told why the guests have come, the ladies turn pale and weep, and Guivreiz explains that they belonged to the knights slain here. After supper Erec asks about the adventure.

als dise werden geste

when these worthy guests

gesâzen ûf der veste,

sat-down in the stronghold,

nû kurzte in die stunde

now shortened for-them the hours

8190

der wirt so er beste kunde

the host as he best could

und sîne burgære

and his burghers

mit sô manegem mære

with so many-a tale

daz sî niht mohte betrâgen.

that them not could weary.

bî einer wîle begunder frâgen

after a while began-he to-ask

8195

ob sî zen frouwen wolden gân.

whether they to-the ladies would go.

diu frâge was in lieb getân.

the question was to-them dear done.

alsô fuorte er sî dan,

so led he them thence,

die frouwen und die zwêne man,

the lady and the two men,

- 8200 ûf eine stiege,
up a stair,
 der meister enliege,
the master unless-lie,
 in ein sô schoene palas,
into a so fair hall,
 dô diu gotinne Pallas
when the goddess Pallas
 rîchsent hie en erde,
reigned here on earth,
- 8205 des gnuogte sî zir werde
of-that would-suffice her for-her worth
 ob sî wære berâten
if she were provided
 mit solher kemenâten.
with such chamber.
 ez was vil wol gezieret,
it was very well adorned,
 sinwel, niht gevieret,
round, not squared,
- 8210 guot unde reine,
good and pure,
 von edelm marmelsteine.
of noble marble.
 der schîn, der ie von marmel kam,
the sheen, which ever from marble came,
 als ez ir ougen wol gezam
as it their eyes well befitted
 und als ez der Wunsch gebôt,
and as it the Ideal commanded,
- 8215 gel grüne brûn rô
yellow green brown red
 swarz wîz weitîn,
black white woad-blue,

dirre misliche schîn

this various sheen

sô g'ebent und sô geliutert was

so smoothened and so refined was

daz er glaste sam ein glas

that it gleamed as a glass

geworht mit schoenen witzen.

wrought with fair skill.

8220

hie sâhens inne sitzen

here saw-they within sit

den wunsch von den wîben.

the ideal of the women.

wer möhte iu die geschrîben

who might to-you them describe

unde geloben ze rehte gar?

and praise to right wholly?

man moht sô wünnelîcher schar

one could of-so lovely company

8225

nie glîches iht beschouwen.

never like aught behold.

ez wâren ahzic frouwen,

there were eighty ladies,

alle glîche gekleit.

all alike clothed.

sî hâten an sich geleit

they had on themselves laid

eine wât rîche,

a clothing rich,

8230

und doch unfrêliche,

and yet unjoyful,

wol nâch kostlîchem site.

well after costly custom.

hie erzeugten sî vil lîhte mite

here showed they very easily with-it

daz in daz herze wære

that to-them the heart were

8235 in etelicher swære:

in some grief:

wan mans ouch selten lachen sach.

for one-them also seldom laugh saw.

ez wâr ir rocke unde ir dach

there were their gowns and their mantles

von swarzem samîte.

of black samite.

kein ermel noch ir sîte

no sleeve nor their side

8240 was in niht gebrîset:

was to-them at-all laced:

als ichs bin bewîset,

as I-of-it am informed,

sô was in zuo den zîten leit

so was to-them at the times grievous

hôchvart und stolzheit.

pride and haughtiness.

ir houbet wâr gebunden,

their heads were bound,

8245 niht sô sî beste kunden,

not as they best could,

mit wimpeln, die wâren wîz.

with wimples, which were white.

da erschein an dehein ander vlîz

there appeared on no other diligence

wan sleht und unwæhe,

but plain and unadorned,

âne goldes spæhe.

without gold's artifice.

- dô die geste in giengen, 8250
when the guests in went,
- dise frouwen sî enphiengen
these ladies them received
- baz dan sî wâren gemuot,
better than they were minded,
- als dicke der bescheiden tuot,
as often the discerning-one does,
- der sînes leides nieman
who of-his sorrow no-one
- engaltet swa erz bewarn kan. 8255
makes-pay where he-it avoid can.
- der wirt zuo in sitzen gie:
the host to them to-sit went:
- dô sâzen die geste hie
then sat the guests here
- Êrec mit frowen Ênîten
Erec with lady Enite
- und Guivreiz dâ besîten.
and Guivreiz there beside.
- diu ougen liez er über gân. 8260
the eyes let he over go.
- nû dûhte in einiu wol getân,
now seemed to-him one well made,
- diu ander schœner dâ bî:
the second fairer there by:
- diu dritte verswachte aber sî:
the third outshone however her:
- vor ir was diu vierde
before her was the fourth
- in lîbes gezierde: 8265
in body's adornment:
- der fünften er des prîses jach,
to-the fifth he the prize awarded,

unz er die sehsten ersach:

until he the sixth saw:

diu sibende erlaschte dise gar,

the seventh quenched these wholly,

unz er der ahten tete war:

until he of-the eighth took heed:

8270 diu niunde dûhte in gekrœnet,

the ninth seemed to-him crowned,

diu zehende baz geschœnet

the tenth better beautified

mit dem gotes vlîze:

with the God's diligence:

der selben ze itwîze

to-the same as reproach

sô was diu einlifte getân,

so was the eleventh made,

8275 hæte sî diu zwelfte lân:

had her the twelfth let:

diu drîzehnd wære volkomen,

the thirteenth were perfect,

het irz diu vierzehnd niht benomen:

had from-her-it the fourteenth not taken:

diu fünfzehnd was ein wunschint:

the fifteenth was an ideal-child:

doch was ir aller schœne ein wint

yet was their all beauty a wind

8280 wider die sehzehenden frouwen:

against the sixteenth lady:

noch mohte er gerner schouwen

yet could he more-gladly behold

die sibenzehenden diu dâ saz:

the seventeenth who there sat:

doch geviel im diu ahzehende baz
yet pleased him the eighteenth better

danne iht frouwen dehein,
than aught ladies any,

unz im diu niunzehende erschein:
until to-him the nineteenth appeared:

8285

dô muoste im wol gevallen
then must him well please

diu zweinzege vor in allen.
the twentieth before them all.

wer möhte sî gar geschrîben?
who might them wholly describe?

diu swachest under den wîben
the poorest among the women

diu zierte wol ein rîche
she would-adorn well a realm

8290

mit ir wætlîche.
with her comeliness.

als er der wünneclichen schar
when he of-the lovely company

rehte getete war,
rightly took heed,

nu gedâhter in sîm muote
now thought-he in his spirit

‘rîcher got der guote,
‘mighty God the good,

8295

hier an ist mir erkant
here by is to-me known

daz dû von schulden bist genant
that thou by right art named

der vil wunderlîche got,
the very wondrous God,

daz dîn gewalt und dîn gebot
that thy power and thy command

8300 an ein alsô enge stat
in a so narrow place

sô manec wîp hât gesat
so many-a woman has set

dâ mite vil manec wît lant,
there with very many-a wide land,

als dir selbem ist erkant,
as to-thee thyself is known,

vil schône gezieret wære:
very fairly adorned were:

8305 daz lâst dû freuden lære.'
that leavest thou of-joys empty.'

ze dem gedanke er dagte.
at the thought he fell-silent.

der wirt ie mitten sagte
the host even meanwhile told

den frouwen niuwiu mære
the ladies new tidings

war umbe der gast wære
what for the guest were

8310 mit sînem wîbe dar komen.
with his woman thither come.

als ditz die frouwen heten vernomen,
when this the ladies had heard,

hie mite wâren sî zehant
here with were they at-once

ir herzeleides ermant
of-their heart-sorrow reminded

des in allen was geschehen.
which to-them all was happened.

daz man sî ê hete gesehen 8315
that one them before had seen

wünneclîche freuden var,
lovely of-joys colored,

des verlougenten sî gar.
that denied they wholly.

daz bluot ir hiufeln entweich:
the blood from-their cheeks withdrew:

dô wurden nase und wengel bleich:
then became nose and cheeks pale:

daz machte in der ougen regen. 8320
that made to-them the eyes' rain.

nu enweste Êrec der degen
now not-knew Erec thethane

wiez hier umbe was gewant,
how-it here about was disposed,

umz imz Guivreiz tete erkant.
until to-him-it Guivreiz made known.

er sprach 'muget ir schouwen
he said 'may you behold

wie dise edeln vrouwen 8325
how these noble ladies

mit jâmer quelent den lîp?
with misery torment the body?

sî wâren der ritter wîp
they were the knights' women

die dâ hie sint erslagen.
who there here are slain.

wan kunde ouch ich iu mê gesagen,
why-not could also I to-you more say,

daz ir dise reise hætet lân? 8330
that you this journey would-have left?

alsô muoz hie bestân

so must here stay

diu schœne frouwe Ênîte,

the fair lady Enite,

missegêt iu an dem strîte.'

(if)-goes-wrong to-you in the fight.'

nû bewegte der frouwen smerze

now moved the ladies' pain

8335 Êrecke sô gar sîn herze,

to-Erec so wholly his heart,

sît in der lîp was gestalt

since to-them the body was formed

sô gar in freuden gewalt,

so wholly in joy's power,

daz ir jugent unde ir leben

that their youth and their life

sô gar den sorgen was ergeben:

so wholly to-the cares was given:

8340 wande in durch ir triuwe

for to-them for their faithfulness

der jâmer was als niuwe

the misery was as new

als dô sî sîn begunden.

as when they of-it began.

ie under stunden

ever at times

sâhens den ellenden man

looked-they the exiled man

mit jâmervarwen ougen an

with misery-colored eyes at

8345

und klagten sînen gnâmen lîp

and lamented his comely person

unde erbarmte in daz sîn wîp

and moved-to-pity them that his woman

solde bî in dâ bestân:

should by them there stay:

wan des wârens gwis âne wân.

for of-that were-they certain without doubt.

sus dâhte der ellende

thus thought the exiled-one

8350

‘got sî der daz wende

‘God be who that averts

daz ich sô iht gevar

lest I so at-all fare

daz ich dise freudenlôse schar

that I this joyless company

iht mêre mit mîm wîbe

at-all increase with my woman

sô daz ich iht belîbe.’

so that I at-all remain.’

8355

hie heten die geste beide

here had the guests both

vil swære ougenweide,

very heavy eye-pasture,

wan in tete der frouwen swære wê.

for to-them did the ladies’ grief woe.

nû ist zît daz man gê.

now is time that one go.

8360 der wirt fuortes ezzen.

the host led-them to-eat.

nû wart dâ niht vergezzen

now was there nothing forgotten

sî heten alles des die kraft

they had of-all that the abundance

daz man dâ heizet wirtschaft.

which one there calls hospitality.

nû habent sî vol gezen

now have they fully eaten

8365 und sint dar nâch gesezen

and are there after seated

und retten aller hande.

and talked of-all kinds.

der künec von dem lande

the king of the land

frâgte se ob iht mære

asked them whether any tidings

ûf ir wege wære.

on their way were.

8370 dô sagten im die geste

then told him the guests

swaz ietweder weste

whatever each knew

daz doch sagebære geschach.

which yet worth-telling happened.

Êrec ouch zem wirte sprach

Erec also to-the host said

‘wirt und lieber herre,

‘host and dear lord,

nâhen unde verre

near and far

8375

hânt mir die liute vor gezalt

have to-me the people before told

wunder vil manecvalt

wonders very manifold

von dises hûses êre.

of this house's honor.

des frâge ich nû niht mêre,

of-that ask I now not more,

wande ichz selbe hân ersehen

for I-it myself have seen

8380

und muoz von schulden mite jehen,

and must by right with declare,

sî habent benamen die wârheit.

they have assuredly the truth.

ouch ist mir mære geseit

also is to-me tidings told

daz hie ein âventiure bî

that here an adventure by

mit starkem gewinne sî

with strong stake be

8385

von einem guoten knehte.

from a good warrior.

nû weste ich gerne rehte

now would-know I gladly rightly

wiez hier umbe wære gewant;

how-it here about were disposed;

daz tuot mir, herre wirt, erkant.'

that make to-me, lord host, known.'

King Ivreins' Counsel

XVII

King Ivreins urges Erec to drop the question, since the adventure has done great harm for twelve years. Erec, firmer than adamant, laughs and insists. The king explains that the orchard, unvalled yet impassable, holds a knight and his beloved, and whoever enters must go in alone and fight to the end. The knight has slain every challenger, among them Venegus, Opinaus, and Libaut. Erec rejoices in a game where he stakes a penny against a thousand pounds.

8390 der künec ein wîle des gesweic:

the king a while of-that fell-silent:

daz houbet im ze tal seic,

the head to-him to valley sank,

und saz ein teil in riuwen.

and sat a deal in rue.

daz kom von sînen triuwen,

that came from his faithfulness,

und benamen bî sîner frûmekeit

and assuredly by his prowess

8395 was im des gastes frâge leit:

was to-him the guest's question grievous:

wande er het ouch ê vernomen

for he had also before heard

daz er dar wære komen

that he thither were come

ûf der âventiure gewin.

for the adventure's gain.

daz beswârte sînen sin,

that weighed-down his mind,

und dâhte an manegen enden

8400

and thought on many ends

wier daz möhte erwenden

how-be that might avert

und wie er im den rât erkür

and how he for-him the counsel should-choose

daz er den lîp niht verlür

that he the life not should-lose

und im den muot benæme,

and from-him the purpose should-take,

als in beiden zæme.

8405

as to-them both would-befit.

ze jungest er in an sach:

at last he him at looked:

belangen er zuo im sprach

at-length he to him spoke

‘herre, ich wil iu râten wol,

‘lord, I will you counsel well,

als ich mînem gaste sol,

as I my guest shall,

dem liebsten den ich ie gewan,

8410

the dearest whom I ever gained,

dar nâch und ich iu guotes gan,

there after as I to-you of-good grant,

daz ir der frâge habet rât

that you of-the question have without

und sî gar ûz der ahte lât

and it wholly out-of the account let

umb dise âventiure.

about this adventure.

ez ist vert und hiure

8415

it is last-year and this-year

unde nû wol zwelf jâr,

and now well twelve years,

als ich iu sage für wâr,

as I you say for true,

michel schade von geschehen:

great harm thereof happened:

ouch haben wir bêde gesehen

also have we both seen

8420 sô vil anderr dinge

so many other things

diu uns sus gnuoc ringe

which for-us otherwise enough light

die zît mugen gemachen:

the time may make:

nû reden von andern sachen.'

now talk-we of other matters.'

Êrec im antwurten began

Erec him to-answer began

8425 als ein unverzagter man

as an undaunted man

des herze doch vil stæte was

whose heart yet very steadfast was

und vester danne der adamas;

and firmer than the adamant;

von dem man solhe kraft seit,

of which one such power says,

und wurde der adamas geleit

and were the adamant laid

8430 zwischen zwein bergen stâhelîn

between two mountains of-steel

(wie möhte dez wunder grœzer sin?),

(how might the wonder greater be?),

die zemüele er kleine

they would-grind it small

ê man ez dem steine

before one it on-the stone

iender möhte erkiesen an.

anywhere might perceive on.

dannoch hete dirre man

still had this man

8435

ze kekheit stæteren muot;

for boldness steadier spirit;

dâ von daz einer slahte bluot

there from that of-one kind blood

disen stein geweichen mac:

this stone soften may:

sô kunde ân des tôdes slac

so could without the death's blow

niht sînen muot betwingen

nothing his spirit subdue

8440

noch ûf zageheit bringen.

nor to cowardice bring.

der rede begunde er lachen.

at-the speech began he to-laugh.

er sprach 'von swelhen sachen

he said 'of whatever matters

ich niht gefrâgen getar,

I not to-ask dare,

die sint ouch ze griulîch gar.

they are also too gruesome wholly.

8445

daz ich dar nâch gefrâget hân,

that I there after asked have,

daz habe ich niht dar ûf getân

that have I not there for done

daz ich des iht gesinne

that I of-that at-all intend

daz ich dar an gewinne

that I there by win

8450 sundern prîs für alle die

except praise before all those

die noch her kômen ie,

who yet hither came ever,

wan daz mich des betrâget,

but that me of-that wearies,

swenn man mich dâ von frâget,

whenever one me there of asks,

beide wîp unde man,

both woman and man,

8455 daz ich ins niht gesagen kan,

that I to-them-of-it not tell can,

und ich doch hie gewesen bin:

and I yet here been have:

dar an velschents mînen sin.'

there by impugn-they my mind.'

nû wânde der wirt er meinde ez sô.

now thought the host he meant it so.

dâ von begunde er in dô

there from began he to-him then

8460 dise rede wizzen lân,

this matter know to-let,

als ich iu ê gesaget hân,

as I you before told have,

rehte zuo der mâze

right to the measure

als im ûf der strâze

as to-him on the road

sîn geselle sagte,

his comrade told,

und ob der iht verdagte,

and if he aught concealed,

8465

ze vollen sagte er im daz

in full told he to-him that

und beschiet in des baz.

and informed him of-it better.

er sagte, der boumgarte

he said, the orchard

der wære gevestent harte,

it were fortified strongly,

swie er wære unumbegeben.

though it were unenclosed.

8470

dar in endorfte niemen streben

there in needed no-one strive

dem zihte mære

to-whom at-all dear

lîp und êre wære.

life and honor were.

er sprach 'dâ wonet inne

he said 'there dwells within

8475 mit sîner friundinne

with his lady-love

ein ritter sô manhaft

a knight so manful

daz er mit sîner kraft

that he with his strength

alle die erslagen hât

all those slain has

dies niht wolden haben rât

who-of-it not would have without

8480 von tumbes herzen stiure,

from foolish heart's guidance,

sî suochten d'âventiure.

they sought the-adventure.

ich sage iu, swelch ritter guot

I tell you, whichever knight good

her kumt ûf den selben muot,

hither comes on the same purpose,

der suoche wan die porte:

he seek but the gate:

8485 bî dem êrsten worte

at the first word

sô vindet er sî offen stân:

so finds he it open stand:

er mac drin rîten oder gân:

he may therein ride or go:

die andern blîbent hie vor.

the others remain here before.

sô besliuzet sich daz tor:

so locks itself the gate:

diu rede muoz sich scheiden

the affair must itself settle

8490

dan under in beiden:

then between them both:

wan swaz ir dewederm geschiht,

for whatever of-them to-either happens,

sî habent et scheidæres niht.

they have just of-separator none.

ich enweiz wiez nû ergê:

I not-know how-it now goes:

wol ein halp jâr oder mê

well a half year or more

8495

ist des daz im niemen kam,

is of-it that to-him no-one came,

sît daz er den lîp benam

since that he the life took

rittern diech genennen kan.

from-knights whom-I name can.

er sluoc benamen hie drî man

he slew assuredly here three men

sô man sî beste erkande

as one them best knew

8500

in deheinem lande.

in any land.

der eine Venegus hiez,

the one Venegus was-named,

der et niht des enliez

who just nothing of-that left-undone

daz ze manheit gezôch,

that to manhood pertained,

Opinâus der nie geflôch,

Opinaus who never fled,

8505

Libaut der dritte man,

Libaut the third man,

der vordes manegen prîs gewan:

who formerly many-a prize won:

der was von Winden geborn.

he was of Winden born.

und die den lîp habent verlorn,

and those-who the life have lost,

8510 sô durft irs niht versuochen.

so need you-of-it not attempt.

und welt irs geruochen,

and (if)-will you-of-it deign,

sô gibe ich iu den besten rât,

so give I you the best counsel,

dês daz ir des vehtens abe stât.

that-is that you of-the fighting off stand.

so gemuot ist der starke man,

so minded is the strong man,

8515 swem er noch gesigte an,

whomever he yet prevailed over,

dem sluoc er abe daz houbet.

from-him struck he off the head.

ob ir des niht geloubet,

if you of-that not believe,

und welt irz danne selbe ersehen,

and (if)-will you-it then yourself see,

sô muoz iu alsam geschehen.'

so must to-you likewise happen.'

8520 dô sprach der künec Êrec

then said the king Erec

'ich weste wol, der wec

I knew well, the way

gienge in der werlt eteswâ,

went in the world somewhere,

rehte enweste ich aber wâ,

rightly not-knew I however where,

wan daz ichn suochende reit

but that I-it seeking rode

in grôzer ungewisheit,

in great uncertainty,

8525

unz daz ich in nû funden hân.

until that I it now found have.

got hât wol ze mir getân

God has well to me done

daz er mich hât gewîset her

that he me has guided hither

dâ ich nâch mînes herzen ger

where I after my heart's desire

vinde gar ein wunschpil

find wholly an ideal-game

8530

dâ ich lützel wider vil

where I little against much

mit einem wurfe wâgen mac.

with one throw wager may.

ich suochtez unz an disen tac:

I sought-it until to this day:

gote sî lop, nû hân ichz funden

to-God be praise, now have I-it found

dâ ich wider tûsent phunden

where I against thousand pounds

8535

wâge einen phenninc.

wager a penny.

ditz sint gnædeclîchiu dinc,

these are gracious things,

daz ich hie vinde solch spil.

that I here find such game.

die rede ich iu bescheiden wil.

the speech I to-you explain will.

8540 ich habe von iu ê vernomen

I have from you before heard

daz dirre herre ist volkomen

that this lord is perfect

an degenlîcher manheit.

in thanely manhood.

des ist sîn êre vil breit

of-that is his honor very broad

und ze ganzem lobe erkant

and to entire praise known

8545 über elliu disiu lant:

over all these lands:

wan er hât wunder getân:

for he has wonders done:

dâ wider ich leider niht enhân

there against I alas nothing have

begangen solher dinge,

accomplished of-such things,

mîn êre enwege ringe:

my honor unless-weigh light:

8550 dâ von ein ritter wirt erkant,

there from a knight becomes known,

des hât mir noch mîn hant

of-that has for-me yet my hand

vil lützel erworben:

very little earned:

an lobe ich bin verdorben

in praise I am ruined

unz an disen tac.

until to this day.

8555 dâ von ich gerne wâgen mac

there from I gladly wager may

mîne kranken êre,

my feeble honor,

daz sich diu hie mêre

that itself it here increase

daz ich gar ze lobe stê

that I wholly to praise stand

oder daz sî vol zergê.

or that it fully perish.

ob mir got der êren gan

if to-me God of-the honors grant

8560

daz ich gesige an disem man,

that I prevail over this man,

sô werde ich êren rîche.

so become I in-honors rich.

und merkt wie ungelîche

and mark how unequally

uns gîltet daz selbe spil.

to-us pays the same game.

ez gîltet im unnâ sô vil

it pays to-him not-nearly so much

8565

ze dem zwelften als ez mir tuot.

at the twelfth-part as it to-me does.

er setzet wider valsche'z guot,

he stakes against false-the good,

sîn golt wider êre.

his gold against brass.

ezn prîset in borsêre,

it-not praises him the-more,

wirt im des siges an mir gegeben:

(if)-is to-him the victory over me granted:

8570

wan so ist im dicke baz geschehen.

for so is to-him often better happened.

ouch bin ich schiere verklaget.

also am I soon mourned.

für wâr sî iu daz gesaget,

for true be to-you that said,

er enwirt des niht erlân,
he is of-that not spared,

8575 ich enwelle in bestân.'
I unless-will him face.'

der wirt sprach 'saget, herre mîn,
the host said 'say, lord mine,

wes solt ir mir nû lieber sîn
why should you to-me now dearer be

danne ir iu selben sît?
than you to-you self are?

nû gên wir slâfen, des ist zît.
now go we to-sleep, of-that is time.

8580 geleben wir morgen den tac,
(if)-live-to we tomorrow the day,

ich bringe iuch an in, ob ich mac.
I bring you to him, if I may.

doch râte ich iu mit triuwen daz
yet counsel I you with faithfulness that

daz ir iuch bedenket baz:
that you yourself bethink better:

daz selbe dunket mich ein sin.
the same seems to-me a sense.

8585 wan unde kumet ir dar in,
for if come you there in,

sô geriuwet ir mich sêre:
so grieve you me sorely:

wan sô seht ir uns nimmer mêre.
for so see you us never more.

des selben nemet iu ein zil.'
of-the same take to-you a term.'

'herre, alsô got wil'
'lord, as God wills'

8590 sprach der ritter Êrec.
said the knight Erec.

dâ mite giengen sî enwec
there with went they away

slâfen ze kemenâten.
to-sleep to chamber.

diu was wol berâten
it was well provided

mit rîcher bettewâte
with rich bedding

und anderm gerâte.
and other furnishing.

8595

sî was wol behangen
it was well hung

mit guoten umbehangen:
with good hangings:

der gemæle was von golde rîch.
the painting was of gold rich.

dar zuo was der esterîch
there to was the floor

mit guoten teppechen gespreit,
with good carpets spread,

8600

als ez des wirtes rîcheit
as it the host's wealth

wol bringen mohte
well bring might

und sînen êren tohte:
and his honor befitted:

wan er was herre über daz lant,
for he was lord over the land,

der künec Ivreins genant.
the king Ivreins named.

8605

er gebôt den kameræren
he commanded the chamberlains

daz sî ir vlîzic wæren,
that they of-them diligent were,

als man rîcher kûnege sol.

as one of-rich kings shall.

des wurden schône unde wol

of-that were fairly and well

8610 geêret dise geste drî.

honored these guests three.

Guivreiz der kûnec dâ bî

Guivreiz the king there by

in einer kemenâten lac

in a chamber lay

dâ man sîn wol ze rehte phlac.

where one of-him well to right took-care.

The Mass, and the Garden of Heads

XVIII

At dawn Erec bears mass, eats little, drinks Saint John's blessing, and arms himself while Enite weeps. The town lines the streets and roofs to watch him ride to the orchard, which is enclosed only by a cloud and entered by one hidden path. With King Ivreins, Guivreiz, and Enite he reaches a ring of oaken stakes, each bearing a man's head except one, where a horn hangs. The king tells him that the empty stake awaits his head.

Êrec und frouwe Ênîte

Erec and lady Enite

8615 hâten guote zîte

had good time

dâ si ensament lâgen

there they together lay

und guoter minne phlâgen

and good love enjoyed

unz in erschein der morgen.

until to-them appeared the morning.

manlicher sorgen

of-manly cares

was sîn herze niht gar frî:

was his heart not wholly free:

8620

wan man wil daz er niht sî

for one will that he not be

gar ein volkomen man

wholly a perfect man

der im niht fürhten kan,

who for-himself not fear can,

und ist zen tôren gezalt.

and is to-the fools counted.

ez wart nie herze alsô balt,

there became never heart so bold,

8625

im zæme rehtiu vorhte wol.

to-it would-befit right fear well.

swie gerne ein man daz fürhten sol

however gladly a man that fear should

dâ von sîn lîp en wâge stât,

there from his life in hazard stands,

habe doch solher vorhte rât

have yet of-such fear without

diu zagelîch sî.

which cowardly be.

8630

der vorhte was sîn herze frî.

of-the fear was his heart free.

sît im der tac ze kamphe stuont,

since to-him the day to combat stood,

er tete als die wîsen tuont,

he did as the wise do,

wan hie gehôrte vorhte zuo.

for here belonged fear to.

ûf stuont er vil fruo.

up stood he very early.

8635

mit frowen Ênîten er kam

with lady Enite he came

dâ er messe vernam

where he mass heard

in des heiligen geistes êre,

in the holy ghost's honor,

und vlêget got vil sêre

and implored God very sorely

8640 daz er im behielte den lîp.

that he for-him should-keep the life.

des selben bat ouch sîn wîp.

of-the same asked also his woman.

ze vlîze begunde er sich bewarn,

with diligence began he himself to-guard,

alsam ein ritter der sol varn

just-as a knight who shall go

kemphen einen frumen man.

to-fight a valiant man.

8645 nâch der messe schiet er dan.

after the mass went he thence.

dô was der imbîz bereit,

then was the meal ready,

grôz wirtschafft, die er alle meit.

great hospitality, which he all avoided.

deheines frâzes er sich vleiz:

of-no gluttony he himself strove:

ab einem huone er gebeiz

of a chicken he ate

8650 drî stunt: des dûhte in genuoc.

three times: of-that seemed to-him enough.

ein trunc man im dar truoc

a drink one to-him there brought

und tranc sant Jôhannes segên.

and drank saint John's blessing.

zehant wâfent sich der degen

at-once armed himself the thane

und bereit sich als er solde,

and readied himself as he should,

sam er enmitten wolde

as-if he in-the-midst would

8655

in den boumgarten rîten.

into the orchard ride.

nune wart der frowen Êniten

now became to-the lady Enite

sorge nie mê sô grôz:

care never more so great:

der regen ir von den ougen flôz.

the rain to-her from the eyes flowed.

nû was diu stat des mæres vol:

now was the town of-the tidings full:

8660

die liute westen alle wol,

the people knew all well,

als ir ê habt vernomen,

as you before have heard,

daz ein ritter dar was komen

that a knight thither was come

der sich des ûz hete getân

who himself of-it out had done

daz er wolde bestân

that he would face

8665

den in dem boumgarten.

him in the orchard.

des muoste gewarten

of-that must await

der kûnec Ivreins von Brandigân.

the king Ivreins of Brandigan.

ouch wolden hindr im niht bestân

also would behind him not stay

8670 sîne burgære:

his burghers:

diu burc bleip liute lære,

the castle remained of-people empty,

ân die trûrigen schar,

without the mournful company,

diu beleip dar ûfe gar:

which remained there up wholly:

wan den was sô leide geschehen

for to-them was so sorrow happened

8675 daz sî des niht wolden sehen

that they of-that not would see

daz sî beswârte mêre.

what them weighed-down more.

von al ir herzesêre

from all their heartache

was doch ditz ir meistiu nôt

was yet this their greatest distress

daz ir niht ruochte der tôt.

that of-them not cared the death.

8680 nû wâr die gazzen in der stat

now were the streets in the town

und diu dach gar besat

and the roofs wholly occupied

von den liuten die des biten

by the people who of-it waited

wenne er kæme geriten.

when he should-come ridden.

enmitten reit Êrec

in-the-midst rode Erec

nider jenen burcwec

down that castle-road

8685

der in zem boumgarten truoc.

which him to-the orchard bore.

nû hôte er untrôstes gnuoc

now heard he of-discouragement enough

und ir stille liezen.

and their stillness left.

die liute im niht gehiezen

the people to-him not promised

baz oder dehein senfter nô,

better or any gentler distress,

8690

wan daz im gwis wære der tât.

but that to-him certain were the death.

des gunden sî sô vil gesagen,

of-that began they so much to-say,

und wolt er immer verzagen

and would he ever lose-heart

von geheize und starker drô,

from promise and strong threat,

sô wære er verzaget dô.

so would-have he lost-heart then.

8695

ditz vernam er für ein spil

this took he for a game

und ahte ez lützel noch vil.

and reckoned it little nor much.

ob uns daz buoch niht liuget,

if to-us the book not lies,

sô was alsô erziuget

so was so contrived

der selbe boumgarte,

the same orchard,

8700

dazs uns mac wundern harte,
that-of-it us may wonder greatly,

witzege unde tumble.
wise and foolish.

ich sage iu daz dar umbe
I tell you that there about

mûre noch grabe gie,
wall nor moat went,

8705 noch in kein zûn umbevie,
nor it any fence surrounded,

weder wazzer noch hac,
neither water nor hedge,

noch iht daz man begrîfen mac.
nor aught that one grasp may.

dâ gienc alumbe ein eben ban,
there went all-around an even path,

und kunde doch dehein man
and could yet no man

8710 dar in gên noch gerîten,
there in go nor ride,

niuwan ze einer sîten,
except at one side,

an einer vil verholnen stat:
at a very hidden place:

dâ gienc ein engez phat:
there went a narrow path:

daz weste der liute niht vil.
that knew of-the people not many.

8715 swer ouch zuo dem selben zil
whoever also to the same goal

von geschihten in kam,
from chances in came,

der vant dâ swes in gezam,
he found there whatever to-him befitted,

von wünneclicher ahte

of lovely kind

boume maneger slahte,

trees of-many kind,

die einhalb obez bâren

which on-one-side fruit bore

8720

und andersît wâren

and on-the-other-side were

mit wünneclicher blüete:

with lovely blossom:

ouch freute im daz gemüete

also gladdened for-him the mind

der vogele süezer dôz:

the birds' sweet sound:

ouch stuont dâ d'erde niht blôz

also stood there the-earth not bare

8725

gegen einer hande breit:

against one hand broad:

diu was mit bluomen zerbreit

it was with flowers strewn

die missevar wâren

which varicolored were

und süezen smac bâren.

and sweet scent bore.

nû was der wâz alsô guot

now was the fragrance so good

8730

von dem obeze und der bluot

from the fruit and the blossom

und der vogele widerstrît

and the birds' contest

den sî uopten ze aller zît

which they practiced at all time

und solch diu ougenweide,

and such the eye-pasture,

8735 swer mit herzeleide

whoever with heart-sorrow

wære bevangen,

were seized,

kæm er dar in gegangen,

should-come he there in walking,

er müeste ir dâ vergezzen.

he must of-it there forget.

des obzes moht man ezzen

of-the fruit might one eat

8740 swie vil od swaz er wolde:

however much or whatever he would:

er muoste unde solde

he must and should

daz ander dâ beliben lân.

the other there remain let.

ez was dar umbe alsô getân,

it was there about so made,

ez mohte niemen ûz getragen.

it might no-one out carry.

8745 hœrent ir iht gerne sagen

hear you at-all gladly tell

wâ mite der boumgarte

where with the orchard

beslozzzen was sô harte?

enclosed was so strongly?

ich weiz wol daz unmanec man

I know well that not-many-a man

den list ze disen zîten kan

the art at these times knows

8750 dâ mite ditz was getân.

there with this was done.

man sach ein wolken drumbe gân
one saw a cloud around-it go

dâ niemen durch mohte komen,
where no-one through might come,

wan als ir habt dâ vernomen.
but as you have there heard.

nû reit der wirt vor in
now rode the host before them

gegen dem boumgarten in,
toward the orchard in,

daz ern bewîste an die stat
that he-him showed to the place

ze dem ritter als Êrec bat,
to the knight as Erec asked,

in ze dem verholnen tor.
in to the bidden gate.

hie bleip daz volc allez vor,
here remained the folk all before,

ân die frowen Ênîten:
except the lady Enite:

ouch muoste mite rîten
also must with ride

Guivreiz der herre:
Guivreiz the lord:

ir menge wart niht merre,
their number became not greater,

niuwan dise viere.
except these four.

8755

8760

- 8765 nû kâmen sî vil schiere
now came they very quickly
- daz sî dâ begunden sehen
where they there began to-see
- des sî von schulden muosten jehen
of-which they by right must declare
- ez wære ein seltsæne dinc.
it were a strange thing.
- hie was gestalt ein wîter rinc
here was set a wide ring
- 8770 von eichînen stecken.
of oaken stakes.
- des wundert Êrecken.
at-that wondered Erec.
- ir ieglich was sus bedaht,
of-them each was thus covered,
- ein mannes haupt dar ûf gestaht,
a man's head there on stuck,
- wan einer der was lære.
but one which was empty.
- 8775 wâ von daz wære?
where from that were?
- dâ hienc ein grôz horn an.
there hung a great horn on.
- Êrec dô frâgen began
Erec then to-ask began
- wiez hier umbe wære getân.
how-it here about were done.
- ‘dâ wærz iu bezzer verlân’
‘there would-have-been-it for-you better left’
- 8780 sprach der wirt zem gaste,
said the host to-the guest,

‘und mac iuch riuwen vaste

‘and may you rue sorely

daz ir her komen sît.

that you hither come are.

iuch hât verleitert iuwer strît.

you has misled your fighting.

nû sehet selbe de wârheit

now see yourself the truth

daz ich niht habe misseseit.

that I not have misspoken.

8785

ob irz noch geloubet,

if you-it yet believe,

seht, daz sint diu houbet:

see, these are the heads:

diu hât der ritter abe geslagen.

which has the knight off struck.

ouch wil ich iu mêre sagen:

also will I to-you more tell:

der stecke der noch lære stât,

the stake which yet empty stands,

8790

der ist der iwer gebiten hât,

it is which for-you waited has,

dâ sol iuwer houbet ûfe stân.

there shall your head on stand.

wurdent ir ab des erlân,

were you however of-that spared,

oder dehein ander man

or any other man

der disem riter gesigte an

who this knight prevailed over

8795

(daz doch niht geschehen mac:

(which yet not happen may:

ez sûmte sich sô manegen tac),

it delayed itself so many-a day),

der solde blâsen ditze horn

he should blow this horn

(dar zuo ist ez erkorn)

(there for is it chosen)

8800 drî stunt vil lûte,

three times very loud,

dâ mit er daz bedûte

there with he that should-signify

daz er gesiget hæte.

that he conquered had.

des êre wurde stæte,

whose honor would-become lasting,

unde wurde ouch erkant

and would-become also known

8805 über elliu disiu lant

over all these lands

für alle ander man.

before all other men.

waz sol diu rede? da ist doch niht an.

what shall the speech? there is yet nothing in.

ich wæne er niender sî geborn

I think he nowhere be born

dem ze blâsen sî ditz horn:

for-whom to blow be this horn:

8810 alle ritter die nû sint,

all knights who now are,

daz ist et wider in ein wint.

that is just against him a wind.

sî daz du es niht entwesen wilt,

since that thou of-it not forgo wilt,

edel riter, got sî dîn schilt

noble knight, God be thy shield

und müeze dir der sêle phlegen:

and may for-thee of-the soul take-care:

dirn mac et niemen des gewegen,

to-thee may just no-one of-that help,

ez sî ein ende umb dînen lîp.'

unless-it be an end of thy life.'

8815

Enite's Swoon, and the Lady in the Pavilion

XIX

At the danger and the discouraging words Enite faints, and Erec comforts her: she may weep when she sees him bloodied, and her love gives him his strength. He rides on alone and finds a rich pavilion, crowned by a golden eagle, where a lady fairer than any but Enite sits on a silver-posted bed. He bares his head before her. She warns him that her lord is near, and the orchard's lord comes riding, huge and armed all in red on a red horse.

alsô dô daz schoene wîp

so when the fair woman

dirre freise war genam

of-this peril heed took

und dar zuo vernam

and there to heard

disen grôzen untrôst,

this great discouragement,

dô wart ir herze belôst

then became her heart bereft

liebes unde freuden gar,

of-delight and of-joys wholly,

ob sî deheine bræhte dar.

if she any brought there.

diu kraft ir zuo der varwe entweich,

the strength from-her with the color withdrew,

8820

- 8825 und wart tôtvar unde bleich
and became death-colored and pale
 und viel vor leide in unmaht.
and fell for sorrow in swoon.
 der liehte tac wart ir ein naht:
the bright day became to-her a night:
 wan sî gehôrte noch gesach.
for she heard nor saw.
 swie dicke ir leide geschach,
however often to-her sorrow happened,
 8830 als ir gebærde verjach
as her bearing declared
 sô wart ir herzen ungemach
so became to-her heart discomfort
 nie zir lebenne merre.
never in-her life greater.
 der wirt unde ir herre
the host and her lord
 die labeten sî dô
they refreshed her then
 8835 und wurden mit ir unfrô.
and became with her unglad.
 als sî ûf sehen began
when she up to-see began
 und sich widere versan,
and herself again recovered,
 Êrec vil manlîchen sprach
Erec very manfully spoke
 ‘frouwe, lâ den ungemach,
‘lady, leave the discomfort,
 8840 mîn süeziu Ênîte.
my sweet Enite.
 ir weinet ze unzîte.
you weep at wrong-time.

waz gêt iu solher klage nô?

what goes to-you of-such lament need?

weder bin ich siech oder tô?

whether am I sick or dead?

jâ stên ich bî iu wol gesunt.

indeed stand I by you well sound.

ir möhtent beiten an die stunt

you might wait until the hour

8845

daz ir mich sæhent bluotvar

that you me saw bloody

od mînen schilt zerhouwen gar

or my shield hewn wholly

od mînen helm verschrôten

or my helm backed

und mich dar under tôten.

and me there under dead.

dannoch hetent ir guote zît.

then-still had you good time.

8850

nû heizet ez doch ein strît

now is-called it yet a fight

daz under uns sol geschehen.

that between us shall happen.

wem noch des siges werde gejeihen,

to-whom yet of-the victory be granted,

des haben wir keine gewisheit.

of-that have we no certainty.

ouch ist mir daz für wâr geseit,

also is to-me that for true said,

8855

got sî noch als er ie was.

God be still as he ever was.

hei wie dicke er noch genas

ah how often he still survived

dem er genædic wolde wesen!

to-whom he gracious would be!

wil er, sô trûwe ich wol genesen.
(if)-will he, so trust I well to-survive.

8860 iuwer weinen ist mir swære:
your weeping is to-me grievous:

und westent ir wie mir wære,
and knew you how to-me were,

sô dörft ir niht sô sêre klagen:
so needed you not so sorely lament:

wande ich wil iu zwære sagen,
for I will you truly tell,

het ich aller manheit
bad I of-all manhood

8865 niender eines hâres breit,
nowhere of-one hair's breadth,

wan der die ich von iu hân,
but of-that which I from you have,

mir möhte nimmer missegân.
to-me might never go-wrong.

swenn mich der muot iwer ermant,
whenever me the spirit of-you reminds,

so ist sigesælic mîn hant:
so is victorious my hand:

8870 wan iuwer guote minne
for your good love

die sterkent mîne sinne,
it strengthens my senses,

daz mir den vil langen tac
that to-me the very long day

niht wider gewesen mac.'
nothing against be may.'

- hie muoste er sich scheiden
here must he himself part
- von sînen sellen beiden 8875
from his comrades both
- und eine rîten fûrbaz.
and alone ride farther.
- vil sêre muote sî daz
very sorely troubled them that
- und hâten sorcsamen muot,
and bad anxious spirit,
- Ênîte und der kûnec guot,
Enite and the king good,
- umbe den hern Êrecken. 8880
about the lord Erec.
- in wîste fûr die stecken
him guided past the stakes
- der wirt selbe mit der hant
the host himself with the hand
- ûf einen stîc den er dâ vant:
onto a path which he there found:
- der was grasec und niht breit.
it was grassy and not broad.
- si beliben alle: er eine reit. 8885
they remained all: he alone rode.
- ich enweiz wiez im ergie:
I not-know how-it to-him went:
- ez enwas et ritter nie
there was just knight never
- mê guntroestet danner wart:
more discouraged than-he became:
- er fuor ein angestlîche vart.
he went a fearful journey.
- des trûrte sîn geselleschaft. 8890
of-that mourned his company.

nu bewar et in diu gotes kraft,
now guard just him the God's power,

daz im der lîp belîbe:
that to-him the life remain:

des helfent sînem wîbe
of-that help his woman

um got biten alle,
for God pray all,

8895 daz im der sige gevalle.
that to-him the victory fall.

hie reit der kûnec Êrec
here rode the king Erec

eine den grasegen wec
alone the grassy way

wol drîer rosseloufe lanc
well three horse-courses long

durch bluomen und durch vogelsanc
through flowers and through birdsong

8900 in jenen boumgarten vort.
into that orchard forth.

nû sach er vor im dort
now saw he before him there

eine poulûne stân,
a pavilion stand,

rîch unde wol getân,
rich and well made,

beide hôch unde wît,
both high and wide,

8905 zweier slahte samît,
of-two kinds samite,

von strichen swarz unde wîz,
of stripes black and white,

und gemâl en allen vlîz.
and painted with all diligence.

dâ stuonden entworfen an

there stood depicted on

beide wîp unde man,

both woman and man,

und die vogelesam sî flügen,

and the birds as-if they flew,

8910

doch sî die liute dar an trügen,

though they the people there by deceived,

diu tier wilde unde zam

the beasts wild and tame

ob ieglichem sîn nam:

over each its name:

diu bilde von golde:

the images of gold:

daz der knoph wesen solde,

what the knob be should,

8915

daz was ein wol geworht ar,

that was a well wrought eagle,

von golde durchslagen gar.

of gold pierced-through wholly.

sî was gespannen über daz gras.

it was stretched over the grass.

an dirre poulûne was

on this pavilion was

êre unde gefüere.

honor and elegance.

8920

disse zeltes snüere

this tent's cords

wâren sîdîn garwe

were silken wholly

und niht von einer varwe,

and not of one color,

rôt grüene wîz gel
red green white yellow

8925 brûn, geworht sinwel.
brown, wrought round.

hie under er gesitzen sach
here under he sitting saw

ein wîp, als im sîn herze jach,
a woman, as to-him his heart declared,

daz er bî sînen zîten
that he in his times

ân die frouwen Ênîten
except the lady Enite

8930 nie dehein schoener het gesehen.
never any fairer had seen.

wan der muoste man et jehen
for of-her must one just declare

daz ir wünnelîcher lîp
that her lovely person

geprîst wær über elliu wîp
praised were over all women

diu dô wâren oder noch sint.
who then were or yet are.

8935 Ênîte was des Wunsches kint,
Enite was the Ideal's child,

der an ir nihtes vergaz.
who in her nothing forgot.

diu frouwe diu nû hie saz
the lady who now here sat

was vil schône gekleit.
was very fairly clothed.

an hete sî geleit

on had she laid

einen mantel härmîn langen

a mantle ermine long

8940

(dâ hete sî sich in gevangen),

(there had she herself in wrapped),

daz dach ein rîcher samît was,

the cover a rich samite was,

var als ein brûnez glas,

colored as a brown glass,

vil wol gezobelt für die hant.

very well sable-trimmed at the hand.

ein wimpl ir hâr zesamne bant.

a wimple her hair together bound.

8945

welch ir roc wære?

what her gown were?

des frâgt ir kamerære:

of-that ask her chamberlain:

ich gesach in weizgot nie,

I saw it God-knows never,

wan ich niht dicke für sî gie.

for I not often before her went.

ouch mohtes Êrec niht gesehen:

also might-it Erec not see:

8950

daz muoste dâ von geschehen

that must there from happen

daz dâ vor alumbe hie

that there before all-around hung

der mantel dâ sî sich in vie.

the mantle where she herself in wrapped.

dez bette dâ sî ûfe saz,

the bed where she upon sat,

wol erziuget was daz:

well furnished was that:

8955

die stollen grôz silberîn,

the posts great silver,

von guotem gwürhte der schîn.

of good workmanship the sheen.

dô er sî dâ sach sitzen,

when he her there saw sit,

mit zühtelîchen witzen

with courteous wits

8960 sô erbeizte der gast.

so dismounted the guest.

sîn ros bant er an einen ast.

his horse bound he to a branch.

an den stam leinte er

against the trunk leaned he

beide schilt unde sper.

both shield and spear.

sînen helm er abe bant

his helm he off bound

8965 und sturzt in ûf des schildes rant.

and turned it on the shield's rim.

des hûetels wart sîn houbet blôz:

of-the coif became his head bare:

wan sîn zuht was vil grôz.

for his breeding was very great.

alsô gieng er für sî stân.

so went he before her to-stand.

daz wære ir lieber verlân:

that would-have-been to-her more-gladly left:

8970 wan sî vorhte ir werren.

for she feared their harm.

doch gruozte sî den herren,

yet greeted she the lord,

wan sis diu gwonheit niht erlie.

for her-of-it the custom not spared.

mit solhen Worten si in enphie.

with such words she him received.

‘herre, ich gruoze iuch gerne wol,

‘lord, I would-greet you gladly well,

wan daz nieman dem andern sol

but that no-one to-the other shall

8975

bieten ungetriuwen gruoze.

offer unfaithful greeting.

wan daz iu sol unde muoz

but that to-you shall and must

schade und laster hie geschehen,

harm and disgrace here happen,

sô hæte ich gerne iuch gesehen.

so would-have I gladly you seen.

wes rât hât iuch her brâht?

whose counsel has you hither brought?

8980

od habt ir iuz selbe erdâht

or have you to-you-it yourself devised

durch iuwers herzen gelust?

through your heart's desire?

sô traget ir under iuwer brust

so bear you under your breast

ein ungetriuwen râtgeben:

an unfaithful counselor:

wan er hât verrâten iu daz leben.

for he has betrayed to-you the life.

8985

gêt durch got von mir stân.

go for God from me to-stand.

ez muoz iu an den lîp gân,

it must to-you to the life go,

und ersiht iuch mîn herre:

and (if)-sees you my lord:

er ist von uns unverre.’

he is from us not-far.’

- 8990 ê sî die rede getæte
 before she the speech made
- und in gewarnet hæte,
 and him warned had,
- nu gehôrt er eine stimme
 now heard he a voice
- starc unde grimme,
 strong and grim,
- diu lûte sam ein horndôz:
 which sounded like a horn-blast:
- 8995 wande im was der drozze grôz,
 for to-him was the throat great,
- von dem sî gie. ditz was ir man.
 from whom it went. this was her husband.
- von ir was er geriten dan,
 from her was he ridden away,
- gewâfent daz im nihts gebrast
 armed that to-him nothing lacked
- und alsô wol sam der gast,
 and so well as the guest,
- 9000 durch jenen boumgarten,
 through that orchard,
- baneken unde warten
 to-disport and to-watch
- ob er iht ze tuone funde.
 if he aught to do should-find.
- nu ersach er dâ ze stunde
 now saw he there at once
- disen gast vor der frouwen stân.
 this guest before the lady stand.
- 9005 daz dûhte in tœrlîch getân
 that seemed to-him foolishly done
- und wolde im versmâhen,
 and (it)-would to-him displease,

und begunde gâhen

and began to-hasten

wider umbe zuo dem fremden man.

back around to the strange man.

nû gesach in Êrec dan

now saw him Erec yonder

rîten unverre.

ride not-far.

9010

des boumgarten herre

the orchard's lord

was lanc unde grôz,

was tall and big,

vil nâch risen genôz.

very near giants' peer.

der underwant sich grôzer drô.

he undertook himself of-great threat.

sîn ros was grôz unde hô,

his horse was great and high,

9015

starc rôz zundervar:

strong red tinder-colored:

der varwe was sîn schilt gar:

of-the color was his shield wholly:

sîn wâpenroc alsam was:

his coat-of-arms likewise was:

er selbe rôz, als ich ez las,

he himself red, as I it read,

gewâfent nâch sîm muote.

armed after his spirit.

9020

ich wæn sîn herze bluote

I think his heart bled

swenner niht ze vehten vant:

whenever-he nothing to fight found:

sô mordic was sîn hant.

so murderous was his hand.

The Red Knight, and the Joust

XX

The red knight rebukes Erec for approaching his lady, and after an exchange of insults, in which Erec likens his threats to two mountains that gave birth to a field mouse, they joust. In the first course their spears pierce both shields and stay whole. In the second they splinter, and both horses sit down on their haunches. The knights fight on with swords from morning until past midday, and whenever Erec thinks of Enite, her love gives him new strength.

nû reit er zuo dem gaste

now rode he to the guest

9025 und gruozte in ein teil vaste,

and greeted him a deal hard,

gelîch einem übeln man.

like an evil man.

‘valschære, nû saget an,

‘deceiver, now say on,

wer hiez iuch der frowen sô nâhen gân?’

who bade you the lady so near go?’

‘waz habe ich dar an missetân?’

‘what have I there in misdane?’

9030 ‘ez ist et vil tœrlich.’

‘it is just very foolish.’

‘war umbe scheltent ir mich?

‘what for scold you me?’

‘dâ dunket ir mich ze balt.’

‘there seem you to-me too bold.’

‘ir sprechet iuvern gewalt.’

‘you speak your power.’

‘saget, wer brâht iuch her?’

‘say, who brought you hither?’

9035 ‘guote friunt.’ ‘nû sagent doch, wer?’

‘good friends.’ ‘now say yet, who?’

‘mîn herze und mîn selbes muot.’

‘my heart and my own spirit.’

‘dâ enriet ez iu kein guot.’

‘there counseled it you no good.’

‘ez hât mich noch gewîset wol.’

‘it has me yet guided well.’

‘daz endet sich hie.’ ‘ez ensol.’

‘that ends itself here.’ ‘it not-shall.’

‘zwiu sihe ich iuch gewâfent sîn?’

‘why see I you armed be?’

9040

‘herre, da ist der harnasch mîn.’

‘lord, there is the harness mine.’

‘wil dû vehten wider mich?’

‘wilt thou fight against me?’

‘welt dan ir, sô wil ouch ich.’

‘(if)-will then you, so will also I.’

‘wes ist dir, tumber gouch, gedâht?’

‘what is to-thee, foolish cuckoo, thought?’

‘des werdent ir wol innen brâht.’

‘of-that become you well within brought.’

9045

‘ez wirt dir ein vil leidez spil.’

‘it becomes for-thee a very grievous game.’

‘ir sprechet ‘niht’, ob got wil.’

‘you speak ‘not’, if God will.’

‘wie versmâhet dir mîn rede sô?’

‘how displeases thee my speech so?’

‘ich ahte niht ûf iuwer drô

I heed not upon your threat

und wil sî wol genôzen

and will them well liken

9050

zwein bergen grôzen.

to-two mountains great.

die swuoren bî ir sinnen

who swore by their senses

daz sî wolden gwinnen

that they would get

in selben ein gezæmez kint,

for-them selves a fitting child,

9055 ein grôzez, als ouch sî dâ sint.

a great-one, as also they there are.

dô verhancte des got

then permitted of-that God

daz ez wart der liute spot,

that it became the people's mockery,

und gebâren eine veltmûs.

and bore a field-mouse.

ouch sint verbrunnen grôziu hûs

also are burned-down great houses

9060 von wênigem fiure.

from little fire.

in ist daz ellen tiure,

to-them is the valor scarce,

die sô griulich wellen sîn.

who so gruesome will be.

daz selbe sol hie werden schîn.

that same shall here become evident.

ê wir uns hiute scheiden,

before we us today part,

9065 unser einem ode uns beiden

of-us one or to-us both

ist daz geuden gar gelegen.'

is the boasting wholly laid-low.'

'jâ, des wil ich dir verphlegen,'

'yes, that will I for-thee warrant,'

alsô sprach der rôte man.

thus spoke the red man.

mit dirre rede schiet Êrec dan.

with this speech went Erec away.

vil drâte er hin wider gie

very quickly he thither back went

9070

da er sîn ros stênde lie.

where he his horse standing left.

sînen helm er ûf bant

his helm he up bound

und bereite sich zehant.

and readied himself at-once.

ûf sîn ros er drâte saz.

upon his horse he quickly sat.

der ander des ouch niht vergaz,

the other of-that also not forgot,

9075

er bereite sich alsam.

he readied himself likewise.

ir ietweder den schilt nam

of-them each the shield took

und leite'n an sich vaste.

and laid-it on himself firmly.

dem wirte und dem gaste

to-the host and to-the guest

begunden die schenkel fliegen.

began the shanks to-fly.

9080

sî erzeugten âne triegen

they showed without deceit

einen grimmeclîchen zorn.

a grim wrath.

diu ros sî nâmen mit den sporn
the horses they took with the spurs

und liezen zsamne strîchen
and let together sweep

9085 vil genendeclîchen
very boldly

von aller ir krefte.
with all their strength.

die eschînen scheffe
the ashen shafts

wurden dô geneiget
were then lowered

und in diu vart erzeiget
and to-them the course shown

9090 zuo den nageln gegen der hant.
to the nails toward the hand.

ir mezzen wart dô wol bewant,
their measuring became then well spent,

wan sî gerieten beide.
for they hit both.

hie wart diu sperweide
here became the spear-thrust

vor dem lîbe durch gesant
before the body through sent

9095 durch beide schilte unz an die hant.
through both shields until to the hand.

die starken scheffe ganz beliben,
the strong shafts whole remained,

swie sêre se wurden dar getriben.
however sorely they were there driven.

wider zugen sî diu sper

back drew they the spears

in manlicher ger

in manly desire

und riten von ein ander dan,

and rode from one another away,

die zwêne glich gemuote man,

the two alike minded men,

durch justieren mêre.

for jousting more.

d'ors wurden aber sêre

the-horses were again sorely

und vaste mit den sporn gemant

and hard with the spurs urged

und wider zesamne gesant.

and again together sent.

hie huop sich herzeminne

here raised itself heart-love

nâch starkem gewinne.

for strong stake.

sî minnetn âne bette:

they loved without bed:

diu minne stuont ze wette,

the love stood at wager,

sweder nider gelæge,

whichever down lay,

dem wart der tôt wæge.

to-him became the death likeliest.

mit den scheften sî sich kusten

with the shafts they each-other kissed

durch die schilte zuo den brusten,

through the shields to the breasts,

9100

9105

9110

mit solher minnekrefte

with such love-strength

9115 daz die eschîn schefte

that the asben shafts

kleine unz an die hant zerkluben

small until to the hand split

und daz spilten ûf stuben.

and the splinters up flew.

mit der manne laste

with the men's weight

kômen d'ors sô vaste

came the-horses so hard

9120 zesamene gestôzen

together pushed

daz den kampfgenôzen

that to-the combat-fellows

wurden ir houbet

became their heads

vil sêre betoubet

very sorely stunned

und daz diu ros gelîche

and that the horses alike

9125 an daz ertrîche

on the ground

hinder sich gesâzen.

behind themselves sat.

die zoume wurden lâzen,

the reins were loosed,

underbeizten zuo der erde.

and dismounted to the earth.

got herre, nû werde

God lord, now become

9130 des künec Êreckes phlegen!

of-the king Erec's caring!

wan er bestêt einen degen

for he faces a thane

der hât ellen unde kraft:

who has valor and strength:

des bin ich umbin angesthaft.

of-that am I about-him anxious.

nû schieden sî beide

now drew they both

diu swert von der scheide

the swords from the sheath

9135

und wurfen se umbe in der hant.

and flung them around in the hand.

hie gieng ez über der schilde rant

here went it over the shields' rim

dô sî zesamne trâten.

when they together stepped.

die grimmen slege sî tâten.

the grim blows they did.

die schilde buten sî dar:

the shields held they there:

9140

die wurden ouch alsô gar

they became also so wholly

unz anz gestelle zerslagen

until to-the frame smashed

daz si ir niht mêre getragen

that they them not more carry

vor den armen mohten

before the arms might

und in ze wer niht tohten.

and them for defense not availed.

9145

dô wurfen sî die von der hant.

then flung they them from the hand.

nû schirmte in daz îsengwant

now shielded them the iron-garb

vor dem tôde dicke.

from the death often.

die heizen fiuwers blicke

the hot fire's flashes

9150 frumten diu wâfen

produced the weapons

swâ sî ein ander trâfen.

wherever they one another struck.

hie ergie sô manec grimmer slac

here fell so many-a grim blow

daz die werlt wol wundern mac

that the world well wonder may

von helmen und von swerten

of helmets and of swords

9155 daz sî ez erwerten.

that they it endured.

vil ofte kam ez dar an

very often came it there to

daz der grôze man

that the great man

den minnern vor im dan sluoc

the lesser before him away struck

vaste unde verre gnuoc:

hard and far enough:

9160 sô sluoc in aber Êrec

so struck him again Erec

her wider den selben wec.

hither back the same way.

der kêre sî sô vil tâten

of-the turns they so many did

unze daz sî gar vertrâten

until that they wholly trampled

beide bluomen unde gras,

both flowers and grass,

daz dâ niht grüener was

that there nothing greener was

9165

dan umbe mitte winterzît.

than about mid wintertime.

alsô werte dirre strît

so lasted this fight

von morgen unz nâch mittem tage.

from morning until after mid day.

‘geselle Hartman, nû sage,

‘comrade Hartman, now say,

wie erwerte inz der lîp?’

how endured to-them-it the body?’

9170

die kraft gâben in ir wîp.

the strength gave them their women.

diu dâ gegenwurtic saz,

who there present sat,

diu geschuof ir manne daz,

she brought-about for-her husband that,

ob im kein zwîvel geschach,

if to-him any doubt happened,

swenne ers iender an sach,

whenever he-her anywhere at looked,

9175

ir schœne gap im niuwe kraft,

her beauty gave to-him new strength,

sô daz er unzagehaft

so that he undaunted

sîne sterke wider gewan

his strength again won

und vaht als ein geruoter man.

and fought as a rested man.

9180 des enmohte er niht verzagen.

of-that might he not lose-heart.

sô wil ich iu von Êrecke sagen.

so will I you of Erec tell.

Êrec, ze swelhen zîten

Erec, at whatever times

er dâht an frowen Ênîten,

he thought on lady Enite,

sô starkten im ir minne

so strengthened to-him her love

9185 sîn herze und ouch die sinne,

his heart and also the senses,

daz er ouch mit niuwer maht

that he also with new might

nâch manlicher tiure vaht.

after manly worth fought.

The Sword Fight, and Mabonagrin Yields

XXI

The red knight's sword breaks on Erec's helmet with a blow so hard that Erec nearly falls. Erec drives him back until his own sword breaks, and hurls what is left of it against his opponent's chest. The red knight tries to crush him, but Erec, who learned wrestling as a boy in England, throws him and kneels on his chest. The fallen knight will yield to no man of low birth. When Erec names himself, the knight yields as Mabonagrin and is spared.

dô sî ditz lange genuoc triben

when they this long enough pursued

unde beide ganz beliben,

and both whole remained,

do gedâhte der grôze dar an:

then thought the great-one there on:

9190

‘mirst zorn daz dirre kleine man

‘to-me-is wrath that this little man

alsô lange vor mir wert.’

so long before me defends.’

mit grimme begreif er daz swert

with fury seized he the sword

und gedâht et vellen

and thought just to-fell

sînen kamphgesellen.

his combat-comrade.

9195

er warf ez umbe in der hant:

he flung it around in the hand:

der vil michel vâlant,

the very great devil,

in kunde niht erbarmen:

him could not pity:

sîn herze gap den armen

bis heart gave to-the arms

9200 krefteclîcher sterke gnuoc:

of-mighty strength enough:

mit guotem willen er ez sluoc:

with good will he it struck:

ûf den helm er in erriet,

upon the helm he him hit,

dâ inz zimier enmitten schiet,

where to-him-the crest in-the-midst parted,

und sluogez alsô vaste

and struck-it so hard

9205 daz von dem slage erglaste

that from the blow flashed

ein breitiu flamme fiurîn,

a broad flame fiery,

daz dez fiur möhte sîn

that the fire might be

gevangen mit eim schoube.

caught with a sheaf.

got lône im derz geloube:

God reward him who-it believe:

9210 wan ich niht drumbe geswern mac.

for I not thereon swear may.

dirre grimmeclîche slac

this grim blow

Êrecke in sîn haupt erschäl,

to-Erec in his head resounded,

daz er vil kûme meit den val.

that he very barely avoided the fall.

sîniu ôren und diu ougen

bis ears and the eyes

9215 begunden ir ambtes lougen,

began their office to-deny,

daz er gehôrte noch gesach.

that he heard nor saw.

wan daz dez swert enzwei brach,

but that the sword in-two broke,

ez wære gewesen sîn ende.

it would-have been his end.

vil schiere der ellende

very soon the exiled-one

sîne kraft wider gewan,

his strength again won,

daz er gesach und sich versan

that he saw and himself recovered

und gehôrte alsam ouch ê.

and heard likewise also before.

schade und scham tete im wê,

harm and shame did to-him woe,

daz sîn ie dehein man

that of-him ever any man

solhe oberhant gewan.

such upper-hand won.

daz er von sîner meisterschaft

that he from his mastery

in sô grôze unkraft

into so great weakness

sînes lîbes was komen,

of-his body was come,

des wart râche hie genomen.

of-that was vengeance here taken.

der gedanc an sîn schoene wîp

the thought of his fair woman

der kreftiget im den lîp.

it strengthened for-him the body.

9220

9225

9230

sînen schaden begunde er anden

bis harm began he to-avenge

und gap ze beiden handen

and gave to both hands

daz swert mit grimmen muote

the sword with fierce spirit

9235 und vaht im nâch dem bluote

and fought against-him after the blood

ûf daz herte stâlwerç.

upon the hard steelwork.

doch er wider in schine ein berc,

though he against him seemed a mountain,

dô et im der wer zeran,

when just to-him the defense failed,

dô muoste er vor im dan

then must he before him away

9240 sînen slegen entwîchen.

bis blows avoid.

daz teter unlasterlîchen.

that did-he undisgracefully.

wande ich weiz benamen daz

for I know assuredly that

und deheine sache baz,

and no matter better,

er wær vergebene niht gebert,

he would-have-been in-vain not beaten,

9245 erne hæte sich gewert,

unless-he had himself defended,

wær im daz swert ganz beliben.

had to-him the sword whole remained.

sus wart er getriben

thus was he driven

mit gwalte von dem gaste.

with force by the guest.

Êrec begunde et vaste

Êrec began just hard

rechen den grôzen slac.

to-avenge the great blow.

9250

er sluoc niht sam er ê phlac,

he struck not as he before was-wont,

sîn slege wâren grimmeclîch,

his blows were grim,

zagen slegen ungelîch.

to-cowards' blows unlike.

er gap slac unde slac,

he gave blow and blow,

daz slac neben slage lac.

that blow beside blow lay.

9255

sus berte er daz îsengwant

thus beat he the iron-garb

unz im daz swert vor der hant

until to-him the sword before the hand

von den slegen vaste erglüete

from the blows hard glowed

und daz im sîn güete

and that from-it its goodness

umb die ecke vaste entweich.

about the edge hard withdrew.

9260

sîn brûniu varwe diu wart bleich,

its burnished color it became pale,

und muoste brestn als jenes ê.

and must break as that-one's before.

nû waz welt ir daz er tuo mê?

now what will you that he do more?

daz im sîn in der hant beleip,

what to-him of-it in the hand remained,

9265 dâ mite warf er den er dâ treip
there with threw he him-whom he there drove

ûf sîne brust sô vaste
upon his breast so hard

daz jener von dem laste
that that-one from the load

vil nâ gestrûchet was
very nearly stumbled was

und gevallen ûf daz gras.
and fallen upon the grass.

9270 iedoch gestuont der vâlant
yet stood the devil

und sach im îtel die hant
and saw to-him empty the hand

und daz swert zerbrochen.
and the sword broken.

‘nû werde ich wol gerochen’
‘now become I well avenged’

gedâhte im der rôte man.
thought to-himself the red man.

9275 mit grimme lief er in an
with fury ran he him at

und wolde in allen gâhen
and would in all haste

in vaste zuo im vâhen,
him hard to him seize,

ûf heben unde stôzen
up lift and thrust

mit sînen kreften grôzen,
with his strengths great,

9280 daz er aller zerfüere.
that he wholly should-fall-apart.

nû het ouch ze sîme gefüere
now had also to his advantage

Êrec in sîner kintheit
Erec in his childhood

ze Engellande, sam man seit,
in England, as one says,

vil wol gelernet ringen
very well learned wrestling

zandern behenden dingen.
with-other nimble things.

9285

ouch half in daz man îsengwant
also helped him that one iron-garb

vil müelîchen mit der hant
very laboriously with the hand

an dem manne mac begrîfen.
on the man may grasp.

des begunde er im entslîfen,
of-that began he from-him to-slip,

daz sîn wille niht ergie.
that his will not came-about.

9290

vor in die gürtel er in vie,
in-front into the belt he him caught,

unden er sich von im bôt:
below he himself from him stretched:

dô was dem andern dar zuo nôt
then was to-the other there for need

daz er in zuo im vienge,
that he him to him should-catch,

doch des niht ergienge.
yet that not came-about.

9295

Êrec sîn kraft erzeugte.
Erec his strength showed.

als sich jener neigte,
as himself that-one bent,

dô sazter sîn ahselbein

then set-be his shoulder-bone

daz ez an jenes brüsten schein,

that it on that-one's breasts appeared,

9300 sô daz er in niht zuo im liez.

so that he him not to him let.

vîl vaste er in von im stiez

very hard he him from him thrust

und zuhte in wider dan,

and jerked him back thence,

sô gâhes daz der michel man

so suddenly that the great man

sîgen begunde.

to-sink began.

9305 von swære er niht enkunde

from heaviness he not could

sich erholn; er suochte d'erde.

himself recover; he sought the-earth.

hie beviel in der werde,

here felled him the worthy,

Êrec der wunderære

Erec the wonder-worker

machete in sô swære

made to-him so grievous

9310 als et in wol luste.

as just him well pleased.

er kniet im ûf die bruste

he knelt to-him upon the breast

und gap im sô manegen stôz

and gave him so many-a thrust

daz jenen des lebennes verdrôz

that that-one of-the living wearied

der dâ under im lac:

who there under him lay:

aller wer er gar verphlac.

of-all defense he wholly gave-up.

9315

als er zwîveln began,

as he to-despair began,

dô bat im der grôze man

then asked for-himself the great man

den minnern einen fride geben.

the lesser a peace give.

er sprach 'ritter, lât mich leben

he said 'knight, let me live

eine wênige stunt

a little hour

9320

und nemt mir danne den gesunt.'

and take from-me then the health.'

'welt ir mir danne des siges jehen?'

'will you to-me then of-the victory grant?'

'des enmac noch niht geschehen.'

'of-that may yet not happen.'

'waz ist danne daz ir welt?'

'what is then that you will?'

'edel ritter, dâ twelt

'noble knight, there tarry

9325

und saget mir wer ir sît.'

and tell me who you are.'

sus antwurt der oben lît,

thus answered who above lies,

‘daz habt ir selten ê gesehen,

‘that have you seldom before seen,

ouch sol ez mir niht geschehen:

also shall it to-me not happen:

9330 wan dâ ergienge ein wunder an,

for there would-come-about a wonder in,

swenne sich der ober man

whenever himself the upper man

müeste dem ndern ergeben.

must to-the lower surrender.

welt ir eine wîle leben,

(if)-will you a while live,

sô volget guotem râte

so follow good counsel

9335 und saget mir vil drâte

and tell me very quickly

von wanne ir sît oder wer,

from whence you are or who,

und dar zuo swes ich fürbaz ger.’

and there to whatever I further desire.’

sus antwurt im der rôte man

thus answered him the red man

‘iuch triugt diu rede. wan da ist niht an.

‘you deceives the speech. for there is nothing in.

9340 swie ir mir habt an gesiget

however you to-me have over conquered

und mit gewalte obe liget,

and with force above lie,

ich wil ê werden erslagen,

I will rather become slain,

ir enmüezet mir sagen

you unless-must to-me tell

wer ir sît od welher hande.

who you are or of-what kind.

jâ mac mir disiu schande

indeed may to-me this disgrace

9345

von solhem manne sîn geschehen

from such man be happened

dem nimer des siges wirt gejeihen

to-whom never of-the victory is granted

und daz ich mich ê tœten lân.

and that I myself rather kill let.

hât ez ein unadels man getân,

(if)-has it a base-born man done,

sô wolt ich durch niemen leben.

so would I for no-one live.

9350

hât aber ez mir got gegeben

(if)-has however it to-me God given

daz irs wert von bürte sât,

that you-of-it worthy by birth are,

so geruochet lâzen den strît:

so deign to-leave the fight:

wan sô tuon ich iu sicherheit

for so do I to-you surety

daz ich gerne bin bereit

that I gladly am ready

9355

allem iuerm gebote.

to-all your command.

ich man iuch verre bî gote

I adjure you earnestly by God

iuwer triuwe, und dâ bî,

your faith, and there by,

ob des niht ensî,

if of-that not be,

daz ir mîn leben endet:

that you my life end:

9360

wan sô bin ich geschendet.

for so am I disgraced.

mich dunket des vil verre

to-me seems of-that very far

daz mir daz minner werre

that to-me that less would-trouble

ob ich mit êren sterbe

if I with honors die

9365 dan an der êre verderbe.'

than in the honor perish.'

des antwurt im der guote

to-that answered him the good-one

mit lachendem muote

with laughing spirit

'ich wil mich lâzen twingen

I will myself let compel

vil gerne an disen dingen.

very gladly in these things.

9370 doch ez wider dem site sî getân,

though it against the custom be done,

sô wil ich iuchz wizzen lân,

so will I you-it know let,

mîn vater ist ein künec rîch,

my father is a king mighty,

mîn muoter wol sîn gelîch,

my mother well his equal,

über Destrigâles lant,

over Destrigales land,

9375 Êrec bin ich genant.'

Erec am I named.'

'sol ich des gewis wesen?'

'shall I of-that certain be?'

'jâ ir.' 'sô lât mich genesen

'yes you.' 'so let me survive

und nemet mîne sicherheit:

and take my surety:

seht, der bin ich iu bereit:

see, of-that am I for-you ready:

sô muht ir dienest von mir hân,

so may you service from me have,

des iu sus muoz abe gân,

which to-you otherwise must off go,

ob ich von iu wurde erslagen.

if I by you become slain.

ich wil iu mînen namen sagen.

I will to-you my name tell.

Mâbonagrîn heize ich.'

Mabonagrîn am-called I'

Êrec erbarmte sich,

Erec had-pity himself,

alsô daz er in leben lie.

so that he him live let.

9380

9385

Mabonagrîn's Tale

XXII

The two knights unarm and sit on the grass, and Erec asks Mabonagrîn, nephew of the king of Brandigan, why he lives shut away. As a boy, Mabonagrîn says, he found the lady in another land and she fled with him, and on the day he was knighted she made him promise any wish. She wished that he stay in the orchard with her until one knight defeated him. Now Erec has freed him and restored the Joy of the Court.

als er die sicherheit enphie,

when he the surety received,

nû half erm ûf bî der hant.

now helped he-him up by the hand.

ir ietweder enbant

of-them each unbound

9390 des andern wâfenriemen

the other's weapon-straps

(wan in half ander niemen),

(for them helped other no-one),

und enwâfenten ir houbet.

and unarmed their head.

hie wurden sî beroubet

here were they robbed

hazliches muotes:

of-hateful spirit:

9395 êren unde guotes

honor and goods

gunden sî ein ander wol,

granted they one another well,

als ein geselleschaft sol.

as a comradeship shall.

sî sâzen ensamt ûf daz gras:

they sat together on the grass:

wande ir ietweder was

for of-them each was

9400 vil müede von dem strîte.

very weary from the fight.

nû rettens zuo der zîte

now talked-they at the time

vil und maneger slahte

much and of-many kind

von ietwederes ahte

of each-one's condition

und daz in ensamt geschach.

and what to-them together happened.

der künec Êrec dô sprach

the king Erec then spoke

9405

‘iwer dinc ich wol vernomen hân,

‘your affairs I well heard have,

daz hie der künec von Brandigân,

that here the king of Brandigan,

der wirt, ist iuwer œhein.

the host, is your uncle.

ez ist iuwer dinge dehein,

there is of-your affairs none,

ichn habe es etwaz vernomen

unless-I have of-it somewhat heard

9410

und sî es an ein ende komen

and be of-it to an end come

wie ez umbe iuch sî gewant:

how it about you be disposed:

wan ein dinc ist mir unerkant.

but one thing is to-me unknown.

sô lange ir hinne gewesen sît,

so long you herein been have,

sagt, wie vertribet ir die zît,

say, how pass you the time,

9415

iu enwære mêre der liute bî?

to-you unless-were more of-the people by?

swie wünneclich et hinne sî

however delightful just herein be

und swie deheiner slahte guot

and however of-no kind good

sô sêre ringe den muot

so sorely lightens the spirit

sô dâ liep bî liebe lît,

as there dear by dear lies,

9420

als ir und iuwer wîp sît,

as you and your woman are,

sô sol man wærlîchen

so shall one truly

den wîben doch entwîchen

from-the women yet withdraw

ze etelîcher stunde.

at some hour.

9425 ich habe ez ûz ir munde

I have it out-of their mouth

heimlîchen vernomen

secretly heard

daz hin varn und wider komen

that away going and back coming

ân ir haz mac geschehen.

without their hate may happen.

swie sis niht offenlîche jehen,

however they-of-it not openly declare,

9430 sî wellnt daz man in niuwe sî

they will that one to-them new be

und niht ze allen zîten bî.

and not at all times by.

ouch zæme disiu frouwe baz,

also would-befit this lady better,

diu disiu jâr hinne saz,

who these years herein sat,

under andern wîben.

among other women.

9435 wie ir moht belîben

how you might remain

ein alsô wætlîcher man,

a so handsome man,

wie mich des niht verwundern kan!

how me of-that not astonish can!

wan bî den liuten ist sô guot.

for by the people is so good.

nû weder habt ir disen muot

now whether have you this purpose

von iemannes gebote?

from anyone's command?

9440

od welt irs lôn haben von gote?

or will you-of-it reward have from God?

od sult ir immer hinne sîn?

or shall you ever herein be?

des antwurt im Mâbonagrîn

to-that answered him Mabonagrîn

‘ich wil iu des ein ende geben.

I will to-you of-that an end give.

ich enhabe mir ditze leben

I have for-me this life

9445

von keinem frîen muote erkorn:

from no free spirit chosen:

wande er nie wart geborn

for he never was born

der liute gerner sæhe.

who people more-gladly would-see.

nû lost durch welhe spæhe

now listen for what cunning

ich mir daz selbe leben erkôs.

I for-me the same life chose.

9450

ichn wolde werden triuwelôs,

unless-I would become faithless,

sô muoste ich ez behalten

so must I it keep

und solde hinne alten,

and should herein grow-old,

mirn schüefe sîn got rât,

unless-for-me should-make of-it God riddance,

als er von sînen gnâden hât.

as he of his graces has.

9455

hiute nimt ez ende,

today takes it end,

ein teil mit missewende,

a deal with discredit,

daz ich lichte sol verklagen.

which I easily shall mourn-out.

herre, nû wil ich iu sagen

lord, now will I to-you tell

9460 wem ich umbe ditze leben

to-whom I for this life

mîne triuwe hân gegeben.

my faith have given.

iz kam alsô daz ich gereit

it came so that I rode

hie vor in mîner kintheit

here before in my childhood

von hinnen in ein ander lant,

from hence into an other land,

9465 dâ ich dise frouwen vant

where I this lady found

in ir muoter gewalt,

in her mother's power,

ein kint wol einlif jâr alt,

a child well eleven years old,

von edelem künne:

of noble kin:

ouch sach ich grœzer wünne

also saw I greater delight

9470 nie an Kindes libe

never in child's body

von manne noch von wîbe,

of man nor of woman,

als mir mîn sin dô verjach.

as to-me my mind then declared.

und dô sî mîn ouge ersach

and when her my eye saw

sô edel und sô wünneclich,

so noble and so lovely,

dô nam sî mîn herze an sich:

then took she my heart to herself:

9475

wan wir dô beidiu wâren

for we then both were

junc von glîchen jâren.

young of equal years.

zehant ich umbe ir minne warp.

at-once I for her love wooed.

der selbe gewerp ouch niht verdarp:

the same wooing also not perished:

wande sî mit mir entran.

for she with me fled.

9480

als ich sî dô brâhte dan

as I her then brought thence

ûf ditz selbe hûs her heim,

to this same house hitber home,

dô wolde mir mîn œheim

then would to-me my uncle

des niht langer beiten,

of-that not longer wait,

ichn müeste swert leiten.

I must sword gird.

9485

dô nam ich swert hie inne.

then took I sword here within.

als dô mîn friundinne

as then my lady-love

und ich ze tische sâzen,

and I at table sat,

dô wir wol halp gâzen,

when we well half eaten,

- 9490 do begreif sî mich sus verre,
then took she me thus far,
 'gedenket, lieber herre,
'think, dear lord,
 waz ich durch iuch habe getân,
what I for you have done,'
 und bat sî des geniezen lân.
and asked her of-that profit let.
 vil tiure wart ich gemant,
very dearly was I adjured,
- 9495 und hiez mich loben an ir hant
and bade me promise in her hand
 ze leisten swes sî bæte.
to fulfill whatever she asked.
 des lobte ich ir stæte,
that promised I to-her steadfastly,
 als mich et diu liebe twanc:
as me just the love compelled:
 ouch het ich des deheinen danc
also had I of-it no thought
- 9500 daz sî mich ihtes bæte
that she me of-aught would-ask
 wan daz ich sanfte tæte.
but what I easily would-do.
 doch wære sî gewert
yet would-have-been she granted
 swes sî hæte gegert,
whatever she had desired,
 swaz ich bringen möhte
whatever I bring might
- 9505 und mir ze tuone töhte,
and for-me to do befitted,
 und tuon noch swes sî gert ze mir.
and do still whatever she desires to me.

des selben bin ich gwis an ir.

of-the same am I certain in her.

swaz sî wil daz wil ouch ich,

whatever she wills that will also I,

und swaz ich wil des wert sî mich.

and whatever I will of-that grants she me.

wie möhte diu geselleschaft

how might the comradeship

9510

haben deheiner liebe kraft

have of-any love strength

under manne und wîbe,

between man and woman,

diu niuwan mit dem lîbe

which only with the body

schînent gesellen guot

appear comrades good

und dâ sich scheidet sô ir muot

and where itself parts so their spirit

9515

daz daz eine lützel oder vil

that the one little or much

gert des daz ander niht enwil?

desires of-what the other not wills?

dâ diu ungefuoge geschiht,

where the unseemliness happens,

dazn ist under uns zwein niht.

that is between us two not.

von hiute über hundert jâr

from today over hundred years

9520

gewancte ichs nimmer umbein hâr,

would-swerve I-of-it never by-a hair,

ir wille ensî mîn bestez heil:

her will unless-be my best weal:

wan daz ist der meiste teil

for that is the greatest part

rehter freude die ich hân,

of-right joy which I have,

9525 swâ ich iht des mac begân

wherever I aught of-that may do

dâ ir wille an geschiht:

where her will in happens:

des selben wenket sî mir niht.

of-the same fails she me not.

von diu, swenn ich niht tæte

for that, whenever I not did

gerne swie sî bæte,

gladly whatever she asked,

9530 dâ missetæte ich an mir

there would-do-wrong I against myself

michels harter danne an ir.

much harder than against her.

und als diu sicherheit ergie,

and when the surety came-about,

von freuden sî mich umbevie.

for joys she me embraced.

sî sprach 'wol mir daz ich lebe

she said 'well for-me that I live

9535 alsô wünnecliche gebe

so lovely gift

der mich got hât gewert.

of-which me God has granted.

allez des mîn herze gert,

all of-that my heart desires,

daz hân ich umbevangen.

that have I embraced.

ez ist mir wol ergangen.

it is to-me well gone.

- ouch wil ich mich vermezzen, 9540
also will I myself presume,
- wir haben hie besezzen
we have here possessed
- daz ander paradîse.
the second paradise.
- die selben stat ich prîse
the same place I praise
- für alle boumgarten.
before all orchards.
- als ir selbe muget warten, 9545
as you yourself may observe,
- hie ist inne michel wünne
here is within great delight
- von aller vogele künne
of all birds' kin
- und von missevarwer bluot:
and of varicolored blossom:
- hie wær daz wesen inne guot.'
here would-be the being within good.'
- sî sprach 'hie wil ich inne 9550
she said 'here will I within
- mich nieten iuwer minne.
myself enjoy your love.
- ditz ist diu gâbe der ich bite:
this is the gift which I ask:
- hie beherte ich wol mite
here secure I well with
- daz ich iuwer mûge belîben,
that I of-you may remain,
- ân angst vor andern wîben: 9555
without fear before other women:
- daz ir hie inne mit mir sît,
that you here within with me are,

wir zwei, unz an die zît
we two, until to the time

daz iu hie inne ein man
that to-you here within a man

gesige alters eine an,
prevail all-alone single over,

9560 alsô daz ez vor mir geschehe,
so that it before me happen,

daz ich die wârheit selbe sehe.'
that I the truth myself see.'

nû war umbe tet sî daz?
now what for did she that?

daz wil ich iu bescheiden baz.
that will I to-you explain better.

des hete sî deheinen wân
of-that had she no expectation

9565 daz ez immer möhte ergân
that it ever might come-about

od daz man in iender funde
or that one him anywhere should-find

der mich überwunde.
who me would-overcome.

sô rehte tiure dûht ich sî.
so right worthy seemed I to-her.

ouch bin ichs noch gewesen frî
also am I-of-it yet been free

9570 unz hiute an disen tac,
until today to this day,

daz ich vil wol erziugen mac,
which I very well prove may,

ob irz niht wol geloubet.
if you-it not well believe.

seht et ir diu houbet?
see just you the heads?

diu habe ich elliu abe geslagen.

which have I all off struck.

ouch wil ich iu mêre sagen:

also will I you more tell:

der stecke der dâ lære stât,

the stake which there empty stands,

daz er niht houptes ûf hât,

that it not of-head on has,

und dâ daz horn hanget an,

and where the horn hangs on,

der beit eines niuwen man:

it awaited a new man:

den solt ich mit iu haben bestat

whom should I with you have furnished

und iuwer houbet drûf gesat.

and your head thereon set.

des hât uns bêde got erlân.

of-that has us both God spared.

ich wæne hiute erworben hân

I think today earned have

ein schadelôse schande,

a harmless disgrace,

sît mich von disem bande

since me from this bond

hât erlæset iuwer hant.

has released your hand.

got der hât iuch her gesant:

God he has you hither sent:

hiute ist mînes kumbers zil:

today is my affliction's end:

nû var ich ûz und swar ich wil.

now go I out and whither I will.

9575

9580

9585

- 9590 und sî iu daz für wâr geseit
and be to-you that for true said
 ir sît ze grôzer sælekeit
you are to great fortune
 disem hove her komen:
to-this court hither come:
 wan mit mir was im benomen
for with me was from-it taken
 elliu sîn wünne gar
all its delight wholly
- 9595 und was er schœner freuden bar.
and was it of-fair joys bare.
 sît daz in mîn abe gie
since that to-them of-me off went
 sône wart et hie nie
so was just here never
 deheiner slahte spil erhaben;
of-any kind game raised;
 durch daz in lebende was begraben
for that herein living was buried
- 9600 mîn jugent unde mîn geburt,
my youth and my birth,
 sô ist et Joie de la curt
so is just Joy of the court
 gänzlîchen nider gelegen.
wholly down laid.
 nû sulen sî ir aber phlegen:
now shall they of-it again take-care:
 wan nû habent sî wider ir trôst.
for now have they again their comfort.

ez hât von michelm sêre erlôst

9605

it has from great pain released

iuwer ellenthaftiu hant

your valiant hand

ditz vil riuwige lant

this very rueful land

und gar ze freude gekêret:

and wholly to joy turned:

des sît ir immer gêret.

of-that are you ever honored.

herre, nû sult ir ûf stân

9610

lord, now shall you up stand

unde frœlîchen gân

and joyfully go

blâsen daz selbe horn:

to-blow the same horn:

wan daz ist dar zuo erkorn,

for that is there for chosen,

ob mich iemen überwunde,

if me anyone overcame,

daz er ez dâ ze stunde

9615

that he it there at once

dâ mite tæte den liuten kunt

there with should-make to-the people known

daz erz bliese drî stunt.

that he-it should-blow three times.

daz ist dâ nû gehangen,

that is there now hung,

unz michs mac belangen,

until me-of-it may weary,

ungeblâsen manegen tac,

9620

unblown many-a day,

daz ich diss heimuotes phlac.'

that I of-this homestead took-care.'

nû nam erz ab dem stecken

now took he-it from the stake

und bat ez Êrecken

and bade it Erec

blâsen. dâ ze stunde

blow. there at once

9625 sazt erz ze munde.

set he-it to mouth.

vîl michel wart der horndôz;

very great became the horn-blast;

wan ez was lanc unde grôz.

for it was long and great.

The Horn, and the Two Cousins

XXIII

At the third blast of the horn King Ivreins brings Enite into the orchard, and the people follow, hailing Erec. Mabonagrins lady weeps. Enite greets her, and as they talk they learn that they are cousins, both born at Lute, nieces of Duke Imain of Tulmein. The heads are taken down and buried, and Brandigan's joy returns in a feast of four weeks. Erec, though, grieves for the eighty ladies, who still live in mourning and shun every joy.

als sî dô über al

when they then over all

hôrten disen hornschal,

heard this horn-sound,

9630 die vor dem boumgarten

who before the orchard

des siges solden warten,

of-the victory should await,

nû sâhens alle ein ander an:

now looked-they all one another at:

wan dâ was dehein man

for there was no man

der des hete deheinen wân

who of-that had any expectation

daz ez sus wære ergân

that it thus were gone

9635

daz der riter Mâbonagrîn

that the knight Mabonagrîn

solde überwunden sîn:

should overcome be:

und rieten die burgære

and guessed the burghers

dazz ein getrügenus wære,

that-it a deception were,

unz inz Êrec anderstunt

until to-them-it Erec second-time

9640

mit dem horne tete kunt,

with the horn made known,

und dô ze dem dritten mâle.

and then at the third time.

nû wart âne twâle

now was without delay

wider dem alten site getân.

against the old custom done.

der künec Ivreins von Brandigân

the king Ivreins of Brandigan

9645

der nam die frowen Êniten

he took the lady Enite

und fuorte sî besîten

and led her aside

ze jenem boumgarten in.

to that orchard in.

daz weste niemen dâ ân in
that knew no-one there except him

9650 wâ man in solde komen:
where one in should come:

daz geleite wart von im genomen.
the escort was by him taken.

nû îlten sî alle
now hastened they all

mit frœlîchem schalle
with joyful clamor

dâ sî die herren sâhen an.
where they the lords looked at.

9655 hie wurden dise zwêne man,
here were these two men,

Êrec und Mâbonagrîn,
Erec and Mabonagrîn,

von aller dirre menigîn
by all this multitude

schône gesalûieret
fairly saluted

und der tac gezieret
and the day adorned

9660 mit frôm wîcgesange.
with glad victory-song,

dâ wider unde in lange
there against as to-them long

daz herze was getrüebet,
the heart was troubled,

sô wart nû freude geüebet
so was now joy practiced

und Êrec schône geêret,
and Erec fairly honored,

9665 sîn prîs wol gemêret.
his prize well increased.

sî ruoften dâ ze stunde

they cried there at once

mit gelîchem munde

with like mouth

beide man unde wîp

both man and woman

‘ritter, gêret sî dîn lîp!

‘knight, honored be thy person!

mit sælden mûezest immer leben!

with fortune mayest-thou ever live!

9670

got hât dich uns ze trôste gegeben

God has thee to-us for comfort given

und in daz lant gewîset.

and into the land guided.

wis gefreut unde geprîset,

be gladdened and praised,

aller ritter êre!

of-all knights honor!

jâ hât dich immer mêre

indeed has thee ever more

9675

got und ellenthaftiu hant

God and valiant hand

gekrœnet über elliu lant.

crowned over all lands.

mit heile muostû werden alt.’

with weal mayest-thou become old.’

hie was diu wünne manecvalt.

here was the delight manifold.

ouch was zuo den zîten

also was at the times

9680

der schœnen frowen Ênîten

to-the fair lady Enite

herzenleides niht geschehen.

heart-sorrow not happened.

des swer ich wol und wil es jehen
of-that swear I well and will of-it declare

daz disen frouwen beiden
that to-these ladies both

9685 ir gmüete was gescheiden,
their mood was divided,

diu under der poulûne saz
she-who under the pavilion sat

unde dirre der dâ baz
and to-this-one to-whom there better

an dem strîte gelanc:
in the fight succeeded:

neizwie der munt, ir herze sanc.
I-know-not-how the mouth, her heart sang.

9690 diu eine freuden krône truoc,
the one joy's crown bore,

diu ander hâte leides gnuoc
the other had of-sorrow enough

geladen mit herzensêre
laden with heartache

dâ von daz sî niht mêre
there from that she not more

in dem boumgarten solde sîn
in the orchard should be

9695 und ir âmîs Mâbonagrîn.
and her beloved Mabonagrîn.

ouch want sî die hende
also wrung she the hands

umb solhe missewende
for such misfortune

diu ir manne dô geschach.
which to-her husband then happened.

als sî diu frouwe Ênîte gesach

when her the lady Enite saw

dort sitzen weinen,

there sit weep,

9700

nu begundes dô erscheinen

now began-it then to-appear

ein wîplich gemüete.

a womanly mood.

ir vil grôziu güete

her very great goodness

betwanc et die süezen

compelled just the sweet-one

daz sî sî muoste grüezen,

that she her must greet,

9705

swie doch jener wære.

however yet that-one were.

manec wehsele mære

many-a exchanged-tale

sagten sî dô beide

told they then both

von liebe und ouch von leide

of delight and also of sorrow

und selleten sich dâ mite

and befriended themselves there with

9710

nâch wîplichem site.

after womanly custom.

von lande, von ir mâgen

of land, of their kinsmen

begunden sî dô fragen

began they then to-ask

und sich mit rede engesten

and themselves with speech to-make-familiar

und sagten swaz sî westen.

and told whatever they knew.

9715

ze künde rechenen sî sâ
to knowledge reckoned they soon

daz sî genifteln wæren nâ.
that they cousins were near.

nû wie möht ez næher sîn?
now how might it nearer be?

sît daz der herzoge Îmaîn,
since that the duke Imain,

9720 der herre von Tulmein,
the lord of Tulmein,

der frowen Êniten œhein,
of-the lady Enite's uncle,

dirre frouwen veter was.
this lady's uncle was.

ouch wârn sî beide, als ich ez las,
also were they both, as I it read,

von einer stat ze Lûte erborn.
from one town at Lute born.

9725 seht hie wart trûren verkorn.
see here was mourning forsworn.

zesamne hielsen sî sich dô
together embraced they themselves then

und wâren beide ein ander frô:
and were both one another glad:

daz sî dâ mite erscheinen,
that they there with showed,

wan sî von freuden weinden.
for they for joys wept.

9730 daz weinen schiere ende nam,
the weeping soon end took,

und lachten, daz in baz gezam.
and laughed, which them better befitted.

ze handen sich dô viengen

by hands themselves then took

die frouwen unde giengen

the ladies and went

dâ si ir herren funden.

where they their lords found.

vor freuden sî kunden

for joys they could

9735

ditz niht langer verdagen,

this not longer conceal,

sî muosten offenlîche sagen

they must openly say

daz sî genifteln wâren.

that they cousins were.

nâch disen niuwen mæren

after these new tidings

sprâchens al gelîche

spoke-they all alike

9740

daz sî got wunderlîche

that them God wondrously

zesamne hæte gesant

together had sent

in ein alsô fremdez lant.

into a so foreign land.

nû fuoren frouwen unde man

now went ladies and men

ûz dem boumgarten dan.

out-of the orchard thence.

9745

diu houbet, als ir hôrtent sagen,

the heads, as you heard say,

diu drinne wâren abe geslagen,

which therein were off struck,

diu nam man ab den stecken

them took one from the stakes

(des êre got Êrecken),

(of-that honor God Erec),

9750 unde wurden boten gesant

and were messengers sent

nâch der phafheit in daz lant

after the clergy into the land

daz man se begrüebe nâch êren.

that one them should-bury after honors.

hie began sich êrste mêren

here began itself first to-increase

diu freude ûf Brandigân.

the joy at Brandigan.

9755 ditz was von schulden getân.

this was by right done.

wan alsô schiere ditz erschäl

for as soon this resounded

in daz lant über al,

into the land over all,

von solhem mære

of such tidings

daz diu freude wære

that the joy were

9760 widere gewonnen

again won

der in was zerunnen,

which to-them was lost,

des küneges mâge und dienstman

the king's kinsmen and vassals

die fuorn ze hove alle dan

they went to court all thence

mit den lantfrouwen

with the country-ladies

die niuwen gnâde schouwen.

the new grace to-behold.

9765

hie samenten sich die besten.

here gathered themselves the best.

der wirt mit sînen gesten,

the host with his guests,

dier dar mohte bringen,

whom-be there might bring,

erbiten unde betwingen,

persuade and compel,

sî machten eine hôchzît

they made a feast

9770

diu mit wirtschefte sît

which with hospitality afterward

werte vier wochen.

lasted four weeks.

mit freuden wirt zebrochen

with joys becomes broken

diu swære gewonheit

the grievous custom

dier durch sînen neven erleit:

which-be for his nephew suffered:

9775

der wirt er hie ergetzet

of-that becomes he here compensated

und ist im wol ersetzet

and is to-him well replaced

mit vil wünneclicher kraft.

with very lovely abundance.

Êrec und sîn geselleschaft

Erec and his company

9780 was dâ zen hôchzîten:

was there at-the feast:

die liez der kûnec niht rîten.

them let the king not ride.

doch was er âne freude hie,

yet was he without joy here,

alsô daz er sîn herze nie

so that he his heart never

von swærem kumber brâhte.

from heavy affliction brought.

9785 swenn er dar an gedâhte,

whenever he there on thought,

so entweich im aller sîn muot,

so withdrew from-him all his spirit,

als ez dem barmherzen tuot:

as it to-the compassionate does:

dem ervollent dicke d'ougen

to-whom fill often the-eyes

offenlîch und tougen,

openly and secretly,

9790 swenner iht des gesiht

whenever-he aught of-that sees

daz wol ze erbarmen geschiht.

that well to pity happens.

ouch was ditz gnuoc erbarmeclîch:

also was this enough pitiable:

ez wart nie man sô freuden rîch,

there became never man so of-joys rich,

dem doch iht erbarmen sol,

whom yet aught pity shall,

9795 ich weiz daz benamen wol,

I know that assuredly well,

hæte er die nôt ersehen,

had be the distress seen,

im wær ze weinen geschehen.

to-him would-have to weeping happened.

im erbarmte diu ellende schar,

to-him was-pitiful the forlorn company,

die ahzic frouwen die dâ gar

the eighty ladies who there wholly

ir freude verweiset wâren,

of-their joy orphaned were,

als dâ an ir gebâren

as there in their bearing

was vil riuweclîche schîn,

was very ruefully evident,

den der rôte Mâbonagrîn

whom the red Mabonagrîn

ir âmîse hâte erslagen.

their beloveds had slain.

beide trûren unde klagen

both mourning and lament

daz was ir ambet alle tage.

that was their office all days.

reht alsam der hase en jage

right just-as the hare in hunt

schiuhet sîne weide,

shuns its pasture,

sô fluchen sî daz von leide

so fled they that for sorrow

daz sî dar inder kâmen

lest they there anywhere should-come

dâ sî freude vernæmen.

where they joy should-perceive.

9800

9805

9810

ouch wolden sî den man

also would they the man

ze allem ir lebenne an

in all their life at

mit ir danke nie gesehen

with their will never see

9815 von dem in leide was geschehen.

by whom to-them sorrow was happened.

The Ladies at Court, and Guivreiz Departs

XXIV

Erec persuades the eighty ladies to come with him to King Arthur's court, and Ivreins dresses them and their palfreys in black. At court Erec is praised above all knights, and Arthur has the ladies dressed for joy in silk and gold. When word comes that his father has died, Erec takes his leave, gives alms, and parts from Guivreiz, Guivreiz for Ireland and Erec for Karnant.

nû half in Êrec trûric sîn.

now helped them Erec sad be.

daz wart doch hier an wol schîn

that became yet here in well evident

daz er ze deheinen zîten

that he at no times

mit der frowen Ênîten

with the lady Enite

9820 sînes dankes von in kam.

of-his will from them came.

mit guotem trôste er in benam

with good comfort he from-them took

ir herzeleides etewaz.

of-their heart-sorrow somewhat.

nû waz tuot dem manne baz

now what does to-the man better

wan der in nâch leide trœstet wol?

than who him after sorrow comforts well?

des ist friunt friundes schol.

of-that is friend friend's debtor.

9825

doch gunde er in râten,

yet began he them to-counsel,

daz sî vil gerne tâten,

which they very gladly did,

daz sî dâ niht mêre beliben

that they there not more should-remain

und sî ir jâr baz vertriben

and they their year better should-pass

und daz sî urloup næmen

and that they leave should-take

9830

unde mit im kæmen

and with him should-come

ze dem kûnege Artûse,

to the king Arthur,

wan sî dâ ze hûse

for they there at home

nimmer wolden werden frô.

never would become glad.

urloubes gerten sî dô.

leave asked they then.

9835

daz was dem wirte niht leit,

that was to-the host not grievous,

wande im was wol geseit

for to-him was well said

daz sî hæten des gejeihen,

that they had of-that declared,

in wære sô leide geschehen

to-them were so sorrow happened

9840 daz si ûf dem hûs ze Brandigân

that they in the house at Brandigan

deheine freude möhten hân.

no joy might have.

nû wolt ern gerne urloup geben,

now would he-to-them gladly leave give,

ob sî ze bezzerunge ir leben

if they to betterment their life

möhten verkêren.

might turn.

9845 und ob nâch sînen êren

and if after his honors

sî wolden freude walten,

they would joy wield,

sô sæhers ungerne alten

so would-see-be-them unwillingly grow-old

inder wan in sîner phlege.

anywhere but in his care.

vil gerne bereiters after wege.

very gladly readied-be-them for road.

9850 der wirt ir willen huote:

the host their will heeded:

sît er sî nâch ir muote

since he them after their spirit

riuweclîchen kleite,

mournfully clothed,

phârt er ouch bereite

palfreys he also readied

sô daz ir varwe beider,

so that their color of-both,

9855 phârde unde kleider,

palfreys and clothes,

glîch und wol zesamne schein,
alike and well together appeared,

swarz riuwevar al ein.
black rue-colored all one.

diu hôchzît hâte ende.
the feast had end.

nû schiet der ellende
now departed the exiled-one

mit disen frouwen von dan.
with these ladies from thence.

9860

da geschach im hovelîchen an
there happened to-him courteously in

daz er sî von danne nam
that he them from thence took

dâ in ze wesen niht gezam.
where to-them to be not befitted.

nû saz der wirt von Brandigân
now sat the host of Brandigan

ûf ein schœne kastelân
upon a fair Castilian

9865

unde die sîne
and the bis-ones

ûf ir ros von ravîne,
upon their horses of mettle,

sô sî sî heten beste,
as they them had best,

und condwierten die geste
and escorted the guests

von dem hûs gnuoc verre.
from the house enough far.

9870

sô bat se Êrec der herre
then bade them Erec the lord

mit heile dâ belîben.
with weal there remain.

dan reit er mit den wîben

thence rode he with the women

und brâhte sî ze hûse

and brought them to house

9875 dem kûnege Artûse.

to-the king Arthur.

dâ was er michel willekomen,

there was he greatly welcome,

und wart des guot war genomen

and was of-that good heed taken

daz sî sô glîche wârn gekleit

that they so alike were clothed

und zen phârden bereit,

and at-the palfreys readied,

9880 und gunden des von schulden jehen

and began of-that by right to-declare

daz sî nie heten gesehen

that they never had seen

keine seltsænern schar,

any stranger company,

sô manege frowen in einer var.

so many ladies in one color.

und die dar umb niht westen,

and those-who there about not knew,

9885 die frâgten von den gesten

they asked of the guests

wiez umbe sî wære gewant,

how-it about them were disposed,

unz inz Êrec tete erkant.

until to-them-it Erec made known.

hie enphie der valsches frîe
here received the of-falsehood free-one

von al der massenîe
from all the household

sîner arbeit ze lône
of-his toil for reward

9890

alsô der êren krône
so the of-honors crown

daz er ze dem prîse wart geseit
that he to the prize was said

daz von grôzer manheit
that from great manhood

nieman zer werlde kâeme
no-one to-the world should-come

tiurre od baz genæme:
worthier or better pleasing:

9895

wan nie manne von den landen
for never to-man from the lands

sô grôz dinc wære erstanden
so great thing were arisen

von rîcher âventiure.
from rich adventure.

wan daz frou Sælde ir stiure
but that lady Fortune her support

gap sîner ammen diu sîn phlac
gave to-his nurse who of-him took-care

9900

dô er in der wiegen lac,
when he in the cradle lay,

sô möhtez nimmer sîn geschehen.
so might-it never have happened.

als sî die frouwen heten gesehen,
when they the ladies had seen,

daz dûhtse ein fremdiu sache.
that seemed-to-them a strange matter.

9905 nû fuorte sî ze gemache
now led them to ease

diu vil edel künegîn.
the very noble queen.

ir sêle müeze sælic sîn:
her soul may blessed be:

wan sî vil gerne âne bete
for she very gladly without asking

vol tugentliche tete.
full virtuously did.

9910 nû weste der künec Artûs
now knew the king Arthur

die geste gerne in sîme hûs.
the guests gladly in his house.

und als er in beite sît
and when he for-them waited afterward

sô lange unz in des dûhte zît
so long until to-him of-that seemed time

daz er möhte zuo in gân,
that he might to them go,

9915 hie was Êrec und Walwân
here was Erec and Walwan

joch Guivreiz, sî drîe
also Guivreiz, they three

und d'ander massenîe
and the-other household

undr ein ander vil frô:
among one another very glad:

zuo in sprach der künec dô
to them spoke the king then

9920 'ir herren, wir suln gên schouwen
'you lords, we shall go to-behold

unser niuwekomen frouwen,
our newly-come ladies,

und troestens nâch ir leide.'

and comfort-them after their sorrow.'

ûf stuonden sî dô beide,

up stood they then both,

der künec Artûs und Êrec.

the king Arthur and Erec.

bî handen giengen sî den wec

by hands went they the way

9925

in ir kemenâten.

into their chamber.

dô was diu baz berâten

then was it better provided

mit frouwen danne vordes ie.

with ladies than before ever.

der wirt zuo in sitzen gie:

the host to them to-sit went:

die andern sazten sich ouch sâ,

the others sat themselves also at-once,

9930

der eine hie, der ander dâ.

the one here, the other there.

und als sî der künec ersach

and when them the king saw

lîden umbe ir ungemach

suffer for their discomfort

glîche klage, glîche riuwe,

like lament, like rue,

glîcher stæte, glîcher triuwe,

of-like steadfastness, of-like faithfulness,

9935

glîcher schœne, glîcher jugent,

of-like beauty, of-like youth,

glîcher zuht, glîcher tugent,

of-like breeding, of-like virtue,

glîcher wæte, glîcher güete,

of-like clothing, of-like goodness,

glîcher ahte, glîcher gmüete,
of-like condition, of-like mood,

9940 ditz dûhtin wîplich unde guot
this seemed-to-him womanly and good

und bewegete im den muot
and moved to-him the spirit

und muostim wol gevallen.
and must-him well please.

er sprach vor in allen
he said before them all

‘Êrec, lieber neve mîn,
‘Erec, dear nephew mine,

9945 dû solt von schulden immer sîn
thou shalt by right ever be

geprîset unde geêret:
praised and honored:

wan dû hâst wol gemêret
for thou hast well increased

unsers hoves wünne.
our court's delight.

swer dir niht guotes günne,
whoever to-thee not of-good grant,

9950 der werde nimmer mêre frô.’
he become never more glad.’

‘âmen’ sprâchens alle dô,
‘amen’ spoke-they all then,

wan si im guotes gunden.
for they to-him of-good granted.

sî wurden überwunden,
they were overcome,

diu vil riuwigen wîp,
the very rueful women,

- daz si ir muot unde ir lîp 9955
that they their spirit and their body
- ze freuden verkêrten
to joys turned
- und den künec dar an êrten
and the king there in honored
- daz er in die wât nam
that he from-them the clothing took
- diu in ze freuden niht gezam
which to-them for joys not befitted
- und kleite sî mit solher wât 9960
and clothed them with such clothing
- sô sî ze freuden beste stât,
as it to joys best stands,
- von sîden und von golde.
of silk and of gold.
- Êrec der Êren holde
Erec the Honor's beloved
- unde Guivreiz le pitîz
and Guivreiz le pitiz
- die wurden dô en allen vlîz 9965
they were then with all diligence
- geêret unde enthalten
honored and entertained
- und ir alsô gewalten
and of-them so taken-charge
- als ir namen wol gezam,
as their name well befitted,
- unz daz Êrecke ein mære kam
until that to-Erec a tidings came
- daz sîn vater wære tôt. 9970
that his father were dead.

nû was des sînem lande nôt

now was of-that to-his land need

daz er sich abe tæte

that he himself off should-put

solher unstæte

of-such unsteadiness

und daz er heim füere:

and that he home should-go:

9975 daz wære gefüere

that were fitting

sînem lande und sîner diet.

to-his land and to-his people.

mit urloube er dô schiet

with leave he then parted

von dem kûnege Artûse,

from the king Arthur,

ze varne heim ze hûse.

to travel home to house.

9980 dô er von dem hove schiet,

when he from the court parted,

dô trôste er nôtige diet

then comforted he needy people

die sînes guotes ruochten,

who of-his goods cared,

und ob siz nimer gesuochten,

and if they-it never sought,

nâch iegliches ahte

after each-one's condition

9985 und als erz haben mahte,

and as he-it have might,

alsô dazs einen gmeinen segen

so that-they a common blessing

mit triuwen tâten über den degen,

with faithfulness made over the thane,

daz got sîner êren wielte
that God of-his honors should-take-charge

und im die sêle behielte.
and for-him the soul should-keep.

ouch schiet der wênige man,
also parted the little man, 9990

der kûnec Guivreiz, mit im dan,
the king Guivreiz, with him thence,

engegen sînem rîche.
toward his realm.

nû wurdens wirdeclîche
now were-they worthily

gecondwieret beide
escorted both

unz an ir wegescheide.
until to their crossroads. 9995

nû schieden sî sich under in,
now parted they themselves among them,

als ich des gewis bin,
as I of-that certain am,

sô nie gesellen zwêne baz,
as never comrades two better,

âne nîtlichen haz,
without envious hate,

Guivreiz gegen Îrlant,
Guivreiz toward Ireland, 10000

Êrec gegen Karnant.
Erec toward Karnant.

The Coronation at Karnant

XXV

Six thousand of Erec's people ride three days out to meet him, and he is called Erec the wonder-worker. At a feast of six weeks he receives his father's crown and settles his land in peace. He credits his fortune to God, not his own prowess, and keeps his honor until death. Enite's sorrows turn to joy, Erec no longer lies idle for her, and the poem closes with a prayer for the heavenly reward.

nû was den sînen wol kunt

now was to-the his-ones well known

beidiu der tac und diu stunt

both the day and the hour

wenne er solt ze lande komen.

when he should to land come.

10005 zehant heten sich ûz genomen,

at-once had themselves out taken,

sô man sî vome lande

as one them from-the land

ze den tiuristen erkande,

as the worthiest recognized,

sehs tûsent oder mêre.

six thousand or more.

durch ir herren êre,

for their lord's honor,

10010 wan si in gerne sâhen,

for they him gladly saw,

sô îlten sin enphâhen

so hastened they-him to-receive

engegen im wol drîe tage.

toward him well three days.

ezn sî daz er missesage,

unless-it be that he missays,

sô mac niemen des gejeihen

so may no-one of-that declare

daz er ie habe gesehen

that he ever have seen

10015

kein willeclîchern antvanc.

any more-willing reception.

als si ir schuldic triuwe twanc,

as them their due faithfulness compelled,

so enphiengen sî in alle

so received they him all

mit zûhteclîchem schalle,

with courteous clamor,

mit rossen bedahten,

with horses caparisoned,

10020

und die ez haben mahten

and those-who it have might

unde ritter wârn genant,

and knights were named,

die heten besunder zuo ir hant

they had separately at their hand

ir baniere rîche,

their banners rich,

der covertiure gelîche,

to-the caparison alike,

10025

undersniten wæhe

inlaid fine

mit vil fremder spæhe.

with very strange artifice.

daz gevilde hie gevârwet was

the field here colored was

rôt wîz gel und als ein gras

red white yellow and as a grass

von ir sîdînen wât,

from their silken clothing,

10030

sô sî diu werlt beste hât.

as it the world best has.

sus enphiengen die von Karnant

thus received those of Karnant

ûz Destrigâles lant

out-of Destrigales land

ir herren der wider kam,

their lord who back came,

10035 als einem rîchen kûnege zam,

as a rich king befitted,

in sînem kûnecrîche.

in his kingdom.

dô het er sæleclîche

then had he fortunately

in manegem lande daz bejagt,

in many-a land that won,

als uns diu wârheit von im sagt,

as us the truth of him tells,

10040 daz niemens lop stuont sô hô

that no-one's praise stood so high

under den die et lebten dô

among those who just lived then

von manlîcher getât.

of manly deed.

an sînem lobe daz stât

in his praise that stands

daz er genant wære

that he named were

10045 Êrec der wunderære.

Erec the wonder-worker.

ez was et sô umb in gewant
it was just so about him disposed

daz wîten über elliu lant
that widely over all lands

was sîn wesen und sîn schîn.
was his being and his sheen.

sprecht ir wie daz mohte sîn?
say you how that might be?

von diu, schein der lîp nû dâ,
for that, (if)-appeared the body now there,

10050

sô was sîn lop anderswâ.
so was his praise elsewhere.

alsô was sîn diu werlt vol:
so was of-him the world full:

man sprach et niemen dô sô wol.
one spoke just of-no-one then so well.

als in got heim gesande,
when him God home sent,

ze freuden sînem lande
for joys to-his land

10055

gebôt er eine hôchzît,
proclaimed he a feast,

daz vordes noch sît
that before nor since

in dem selben lande nie
in the same land never

dehein sô wünnecliche ergie
any so delightfully came-about

und von herren alsô grôz.
and of lords so great.

10060

her kom vil manec sîn genôz,
hither came very many-a his peer,

die ich iu gerne nande,
whom I to-you gladly would-name,

ob ich ir namen erkande.

if I their names knew.

hie enphienc er lobeliche

here received he laudably

10065 die krône von dem rîche

the crown of the realm

der sîn vater, der künec Lac,

whiche his father, the king Lac,

unz an in mit êren phlac:

until to him with honors kept:

wan er vil manege tugent begie.

for he very many-a virtue practiced.

ouch wart kein frumer vater nie

also was no valiant father ever

10070 mit sînem sune baz ersat.

with his son better replaced.

wer zæme baz an sîner stat?

who would-befit better in his place?

got segene im sîn rîche:

God bless for-him his realm:

er hât ez billiche,

he has it rightfully,

wir suln im sîn wol gunnen:

we shall to-him of-it well grant:

10075 wan er hât es wol begunnen

for he has of-it well begun

mit freuden und mit wirtschaft.

with joys and with hospitality.

man mohte et dâ grôze kraft

one might just there great abundance

von rittern und von frouwen

of knights and of ladies

wol sehs wochen schouwen.

well six weeks behold.

- swie lange sî werte, 10080
however long it lasted,
- swes man ze freuden gerte,
whatever one for joys desired,
- wie vil des mǎnlich dâ vant!
how much of-that every-man there found!
- hie sazte er sô sîn lant
here settled he so his land
- daz ez fridelîchen stuont.
that it peacefully stood.
- er tete sam die wîsen tuont, 10085
he did as the wise do,
- die des gote genâde sagent
who of-that to-God thanks say
- swaz sî êren bejagent
whatever they honors win
- und ez von im wellent hân.
and it from him will have.
- sô triuget manegen ein wân
so deceives many-a a delusion
- der in benamen beswîchet, 10090
which him assuredly betrays,
- so er sich des muotes rîchet,
when he himself of-the spirit enriches,
- ob im iht guotes widervert,
if to-him aught of-good befalls,
- daz im daz sî beschert
that to-him that he granted
- niuwan von sîner frûmekeit,
only from his prowess,
- und es gote dehein gnâde seit. 10095
and of-it to-God no thanks says.
- vil lîhte ein ende des geschiht.
very likely an end of-that happens.

alsô entete der künec niht.

so did the king not.

sît in got hete geêret,

since him God had honored,

dô wart etz im gekêret

then was just-it to-him turned

10100 ze lobe in allen stunden.

to praise in all hours.

des wart er schœne funden

of-that was he fairly found

als im sîn herze gerte:

as to-him his heart desired:

wan im sîn êre werte

for to-him his honor lasted

unz an sînen tôr,

until to his death,

10105 als im der himelvogt gebôt,

as to-him the heaven-lord commanded,

ân alle missewende.

without all blemish.

in dem ellende

in the exile

het diu frouwe Ênîte

had the lady Enite

erliten übele zîte:

suffered evil times:

10110 daz hât sî wol bewendet:

that has she well spent:

wan sich daz hie endet,

for itself that here ends,

und muoz sich verkêren

and must itself turn

ze gemache und ze êren

to ease and to honors

und ze wünne manec leide.

and to delight many-a sorrow.

ze wunsche wurbens beide,

to wish fared-they both,

10115

wan sî got hete gesant

for them God had sent

ze freuden in ir eigen lant,

to joys into their own land,

ir vater und ir muoter.

her father and her mother.

der künec selbe huoter

the king himself heeded-he

ir willen swâ er mohte,

her will wherever he might,

10120

und doch als im tohte,

and yet as to-him befitted,

niht sam er ê phlac,

not as he before was-wont,

dô er sich durch sî verlac:

when he himself for her lay-idle:

wan er nâch êren lebte

for he after honors lived

und sô daz im got gebte

and so that to-him God gave

10125

mit väterlichem lône,

with fatherly reward,

nâch der werlt krône,

after the world's crown,

im und sînem wîbe,

to-him and to-his woman,

mit dem êwegen lîbe.

with the eternal life.

10130 durch got des bitet alle

for God of-that pray all

daz uns des lôn gevalle

that to-us of-him reward fall

der uns hât ze holden

who us has for friends

(daz ist golt übergolden),

(that is gold over-gilded),

nâch disem ellende.

after this exile.

10135 hie hât ditz getiht ein ende.

here has this poem an end.